

DRAFT 2026 FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings

Contents

Part 1 General

- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 Planning, Design, Construction, Commissioning
- 1.2 Tables
- 1.3 Site
- 1.4 Equipment

Part 1 Tables

- Table 1.2-1: Safety Risk Assessment (SRA) Components *[no changes; not in draft]*
- Table 1.2-2: Table 1.2-2: Setting Type Characteristics
- Table 1.2-3: Categorization of Residential Care and Support Facility Sites by Exterior Ambient Sound with Design Criteria for Sound Isolation of Exterior Shell in New Construction *[no changes; not in draft]*
- Table 1.2-4: Minimum Design Room-Average Sound Absorption Coefficients ($\bar{\alpha}$)
- Table 1.2-5: Maximum Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems
- Table 1.2-6: Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms *[no changes; not in draft]*
- Table 1.2-7: Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces *[no changes; not in draft]*

Part 2 Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings

- 2.1 Common Elements

Part 2 Tables

- Table 2.1: Required Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces
- Table 2.2: Hot Water Use—Residential Care and Support Settings *[no changes; not in draft]*

Part 3 Residential Health Facilities

- 3.1 Specific Requirements for Nursing Homes
- 3.2 Specific Requirements Hospice Facilities

Part 4 Residential Care and Support Facilities

- 4.1 Specific Requirements Assisted Living Settings
- 4.2 Specific Requirements Independent Living Settings
- 4.3 Specific Requirements Long-Term Residential Substance Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

- 4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities
- 4.5 Specific Requirements Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

Part 5 Non-Residential Support Facilities

- 5.1 Specific Requirements Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities
- 5.2 Specific Requirements Wellness Centers
- 5.3 Specific Requirements Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

To submit comments on proposed changes in this draft, please visit www.fgiguilines.net.

DRAFT

1.1 Introduction

1.1-1 General

1.1-1.1 Application

The provisions of this chapter shall apply to all new construction and renovation of residential care and support facilities.

1.1-1.2 Minimum Standards for New Facilities and Renovations

1.1-1.2.1 Each chapter in this document contains information intended as minimum standards for design and construction of new residential care and support facilities and for major renovation of existing residential care and support facilities.

1.1-1.2.2 Standards set forth in the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* shall be considered minimum and do not prohibit designing facilities and systems that exceed these requirements.

1.1-1.2.2.1 The *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* text is not intended to restrict innovation and improvement in design or construction techniques. Accordingly, authorities adopting these standards as code are encouraged to approve plans and specifications that contain deviations if they determine the applicable intent or objective of the standards has been met.

1.1-1.2.2.2 Use of new or alternate concepts shall be permitted when the requesting organization demonstrates an equal or higher operational goal is achieved and safety is not compromised.

1.1-2 New Construction

Projects with any of the following scopes of work shall be considered new construction and shall comply with the requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*:

1.1-2.1 Site preparation for and construction of entirely new structures and systems

1.1-2.2 Structural additions to existing facilities that result in an increase of occupied floor area

1.1-2.3 Change in function in an entire existing building or an entire area in an existing building

1.1-3 Renovation

1.1-3.1 General

1.1-3.1.1 Compliance Requirements

1.1-3.1.1.1 Where renovation or replacement work is done in an existing facility, all new work or additions or both shall comply with applicable sections of the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* and local, state, and federal codes.

1.1-3.1.1.2 Major renovation projects. Projects with any of the following scopes of work shall be considered a major renovation and shall comply with the requirements for new construction in the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* to the extent possible as determined by the applicable authority having jurisdiction:

- (1) A series of planned changes and updates to the physical plant of an existing facility
- (2) A renovation project that includes modification of an entire building or an entire area in a building to accommodate a new use or occupancy
- (3) Change in function in an area of an existing building for which the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* requirements for clinical spaces, clinical support areas, or infrastructure are different from those for the originally approved function

1.1-3.1.1.3 Occupancy conversion projects. When a building is converted from one occupancy type to another, it shall comply with the new construction requirements.

1.1-3.1.1.4 Building system projects

- (1) Only the altered, renovated, or modernized portion of an existing building system or individual component shall be required to meet the installation and equipment requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.
- (2) When such construction impairs the performance of the balance of an affected building system, upgrades to that system shall be required beyond the limits of the project to the extent required to maintain existing operational performance.

1.1-3.1.2 Exceptions

1.1-3.1.2.1 Where major structural elements make total compliance impractical or impossible, exceptions shall be considered.

1.1-3.1.2.2 The following exceptions to the requirements in Section 1.1-3.1.1 (Compliance Requirements) shall be permitted provided they do not reduce the level of health and safety in an existing facility.

- (1) Routine repairs and maintenance to buildings, systems, or equipment ~~shall not require improvements to building features or systems.~~
- (4) Replacement of building furnishings and movable or fixed equipment shall only require improvements to building systems that serve that equipment and only to the extent necessary to provide sufficient capacity for the replacement.
- (2) Minor changes to the configuration of an existing space ~~shall not require an upgrade of the entire space.~~
- (3) Cosmetic changes or upgrades to an existing space ~~shall not require upgrade of the entire space.~~
- (5) **1.1-3.1.2.3** Improvements to a building system or a space that cannot reasonably meet the requirements of this document shall be permitted, provided the improvement does not impair other systems or functions of the building.
- (6) **1.1-3.1.2.4** Existing systems that are not in strict compliance with the provisions of this document shall be permitted to continue in use, unless the authority having jurisdiction has determined that such use constitutes a distinct hazard to life.

~~(7)~~ **1.1-3.1.2.5** Replacement of mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and fire protection equipment and infrastructure for maintenance purposes due to the failure or degraded performance of the components being replaced shall be permitted provided the health and safety in the facility is maintained at existing levels.

1.1-3.1.3 Phased Projects

These standards shall not be construed as prohibiting a single phase of improvement that is part of a multiphase construction plan for a single project.

1.1-3.1.4 Temporary Waivers

When parts of an existing facility essential to continued overall facility operation cannot comply with particular standards during a renovation project, a temporary waiver of those standards shall be permitted as determined by the authority having jurisdiction if occupant health and safety will not be jeopardized as a result.

1.1-3.2 Facilities Subject to Compliance with the *FGI Facility Code Care and Support Settings*

1.1-3.2.1 Affected Areas

In renovation projects and additions to existing facilities, only that portion of the total facility affected by the project shall be required to comply with applicable sections of the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

1.1-3.2.2 Unaffected Areas

Existing portions of the facility and associated building systems that are not included in a renovation project but are essential to the functionality or code compliance of the renovated spaces shall, at minimum, comply with the applicable occupancy chapter of NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*.

~~**1.1-3.3 Undiminished Safety**~~

~~Renovations, including new additions, shall not diminish the safety level that existed prior to the start of the work. However, a safety level that exceeds that required for new facilities is not required by the *Guidelines*.~~

1.1-3.3.4 Long-Range Improvement

~~**1.1-3.4.1**~~ Nothing in the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* shall be construed as prohibiting a facility from making upgrades or alterations as part of a phased long-range safety improvement plan.

~~**1.1-3.4.2** All hazards to life and safety and all areas of noncompliance with applicable codes and regulations shall be corrected as soon as possible in accordance with a plan of correction.~~

1.1-4 Government Regulations

The government regulations listed in this section shall be reviewed for applicability to each project.

1.1-4.1 Design Standards for Accessibility

Flexibility in applying general accessibility standards shall be permitted to address considerations for transfer assistance [with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction](#):-

1.1-4.2 Regulations for Earthquake-Resistant Design for New Buildings

1.1-4.3 Flood Protection

1.1-4.4 National Standards for the Protection of Resident Health Information

1.1-4.5 Federal, State, and Local Environmental Regulations

1.1-5 Building Codes and Standards

1.1-5.1 Safe Environment

Every residential care and support settings shall provide and maintain a safe environment for residents, patients, participants, personnel, and the public.

1.1-5.2 Code Compliance

1.1-5.2.1 In the absence of state or local requirements, the project shall comply with approved nationally recognized building codes except as modified in the latest edition of NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code* and/or herein.

1.1-5.2.2 Unless otherwise stated, other industry codes referred to in the FGI *Facility Code* are contained in the edition of the referenced code current when this edition of the FGI *Facility Code* was published.

1.1-6 Equivalency Concepts

1.1-6.1. Although the FGI *Facility Code* is adopted as a regulatory standard by many jurisdictions, it is the intent of the document to permit and promote equivalency concepts.

1.1-6.2 Nothing in this document shall be construed as restricting innovations that provide an equivalent level of performance with these standards provided that no other safety element or system is compromised to establish equivalency.

1.1-7 English/Metric Measurements

1.1-7.1 Where measurements are given in this document, the English units shall constitute the basic requirement. Approximately equivalent metric units are provided in parentheses after the English units.

1.1-7.2 Either method shall be consistently used throughout a given project design.

1.2 Planning, Design, Construction, and Commissioning

1.2-1 General

1.2-1.1 Application

The provisions of this chapter shall apply to all residential care and support facility projects.

1.2-1.2 Planning and Design Process

1.2-1.2.1 Planning Process

To meet the objectives of this chapter, residential care and support organizations shall develop an interdisciplinary planning process to guide facility design.

1.2-1.2.2 Design Process

To meet the objectives of this chapter, the owner/operator shall develop an integrated design process to guide facility design.

1.2-1.2.3 Design Team

A multidisciplinary design team shall participate throughout the project design process.

1.2-1.3 Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations

1.2-1.3.1 General

Environment of care ~~and facility function directly~~ affects the experience of residential care and support facility occupants. The requirements in sections 1.2-2 (Functional Program) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) shall apply.

1.2-1.3.2 Framework for Residential Care and Support Facility Design

Because the physical environment has a profound effect on human health and productivity and on the natural environment, residential care and support facilities shall be designed in a framework that considers the following:

1.2-1.3.2.1 Organizational philosophy

1.2-1.3.2.2 Organizational structure

1.2-1.3.2.3 Staff roles

1.2-1.3.2.4 Staff education and training

1.2-1.3.2.5 Resident quality of life

1.2-1.3.2.6 Operational processes and procedures

1.2-1.3.2.7 Resident safety, including provisions for infection control. The requirements in Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) shall apply.

1.2-2 Functional Program

1.2-2.1 General

1.2-2.1.1 Functional Program Purpose

1.2-2.1.1.1 The functional program shall be used to develop the physical space program that serves as the basis for the project design and construction documents.

1.2-2.1.1.2 The owner/operator shall retain the functional program with other design data to facilitate future alterations, additions, and program changes.

1.2-2.1.2 Functional Program Requirement

1.2-2.1.2.1 The owner/operator shall be responsible for providing a functional program for each facility project to the project architect/engineer.

- (1) Projects that only involve activities such as equipment replacement, fire safety upgrades, or minor renovations that will not change the facility's function or character shall not require a functional program.
- (2) Findings and recommendations from the safety risk assessment (see Section 1.2-4) shall be addressed in the functional program.

1.2-2.1.2.2 Executive summary

- (1) The functional program shall include an executive summary as well as detailed information about each operation conducted in the facility that will affect the physical setting design.
- (2) The executive summary shall include identification of the intended care population.

1.2-2.1.3 Nomenclature in the Functional Program

1.2-2.1.3.1 Names for spaces and departments used in the functional program shall be consistent with the following:

- (1) The *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*
- (2) Submitted floor plans

1.2-2.1.3.2 Acronyms shall be clearly defined.

1.2-2.2 Functional Program Content

1.2-2.2.1 Owner's Project Requirements

1.2-2.2.1.1 The functional program shall describe in detail the owner/operator's expectations for the project, including the delivery of care model [and setting type characteristics provided in Table 1.2-2 \(Setting Type Characteristics\)](#).

1.2-2.2.1.2 The functional program shall provide the following information for the project consistent with the owner/operator's expectations for the delivery of care model and project scope:

- (1) Who will be served by the project (e.g., residents, hospice patients, staff, families, volunteers)
 - (a) If the care population includes individuals of size, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply.
 - (b) If the care population includes residents with dementia, behavioral and mental health issues, or cognitive and developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and cognitive and developmental disabilities) shall apply.
 - (c) If the care population includes residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.
- (2) What user activities will occur in the spaces affected or created by the project
- (3) Why each user group is engaged in each activity
- (4) When these activities will take place
- (5) Where these activities will take place (inside and outside the building)
- (6) What resources (e.g., people, equipment, supplies, processes, training) will be needed to carry out these activities

1.2-2.2.2 Reserved

1.2-2.2.3 Functional Requirements

1.2-2.2.3.1 The project design shall accommodate the owner/operator's operational needs and objectives commensurate with the scope and purpose of the project.

1.2-2.2.3.2 Explanation of the functional requirements for the project shall cover, at minimum, the following:

- (1) Site
 - (a) Building orientation
 - (b) Major points of entry
 - (c) Landscaping and garden features (hardscape and softscape)
 - (d) Pedestrian circulation
 - (e) Vehicular circulation (roads and parking)
 - (f) Wayfinding (landmarks and signage)
 - (g) Art
 - (h) Outside programming
 - (i) Lighting
 - (j) Acoustics

- (2) Operational circulation patterns. These shall include interior and exterior circulation patterns for:
 - (a) Residents, staff, and family/visitors
 - (b) Equipment for infectious waste handling
 - (c) Delivery of products, materials, and services
 - (d) Removal of trash, recycling, and other types of waste
- (3) Space and equipment needs. The following shall be described for each space:
 - (a) Size and function
 - (b) Projected occupant load (staff; residents, including their mobility needs; and visitors)
 - (c) Projected numbers and types of community spaces
 - (d) Required adjacencies
 - (e) Technology requirements
 - (f) Acoustic requirements
 - (g) Lighting requirements
 - (h) Electrical requirements
 - (i) Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning requirements
 - (j) Fixed and movable equipment
 - (k) Furnishings and fixtures
- (4) Short- and long-term planning considerations. These shall include the following:
 - (a) Flexibility and future growth
 - (b) Impact on existing adjacent facilities
 - (c) Effect on existing operations
 - (d) Integration of technology and equipment
 - (e) Changes in resident population over time, including cognitive and physical abilities
 - (f) Provisions for end-of-life care for residents and support of families

1.2-3 Reserved

1.2-4 Safety Risk Assessment (SRA)

1.2-4.1 General

1.2-4.1.1 SRA Requirement

1.2-4.1.1.1 Every new or renovated residential health, care, or support facility shall be designed to facilitate safe delivery of care consistent with the level of care outlined in the functional program.

1.2-4.1.1.2 To support this goal, a safety risk assessment shall be developed and completed by a multidisciplinary team.

1.2-4.1.2 SRA Components

For each space in the building, the following assessments shall be performed as part of the SRA:

1.2-4.1.2.1 Infection control risk assessment

1.2-4.1.2.2 Resident mobility and transfer risk assessment

1.2-4.1.2.3 Fall risk and prevention assessment

1.2-4.1.2.4 Medication safety assessment

1.2-4.1.2.5 Resident dementia and behavioral and mental health risk assessment

1.2-4.1.2.6 Security risk assessment

1.2-4.1.2.7 Disaster, emergency, and vulnerability assessment

1.2-4.1.3 SRA Responsibility and Scope

1.2-4.1.3.1 The safety risk assessment shall be initiated by the owner/operator during the planning phase of the project (i.e., before construction begins) and continue through project design, construction, and commissioning as applicable.

1.2-4.1.3.2 The SRA shall be updated with additional detail as required to support a safe environment throughout the design, construction, and commissioning phases of the project.

1.2-4.1.4 SRA Team

1.2-4.1.4.1 The owner/operator shall appoint a multidisciplinary team to conduct the safety risk assessment.

1.2-4.1.4.2 The SRA team shall include stakeholders for the identified project.

1.2-4.1.5 SRA Process

1.2-4.1.5.1 Identify hazards. The owner/operator shall provide an assessment of the potential hazards to residents, caregivers, visitors from the community at-large, and other users specific to the project. This assessment shall consist of the components listed in Table 1.2-1 (Safety Risk Assessment Components).

1.2-4.1.5.2 Evaluate risks from identified hazards. The SRA team shall evaluate underlying conditions that contribute to an unsafe environment for each SRA component listed in Table 1.2-1 and estimate associated risks based on the following:

- (1) Likelihood (i.e., vulnerability), based on available historical data and/or national resident and caregiver safety trends relevant to the identified hazards

- (2) Consequence (i.e., estimated degree of potential harm to residents and/or caregivers from identified hazards)

1.2-4.1.5.3 Generate solutions. The SRA team shall document proposed solutions that mitigate risks from the identified hazards.

1.2-4.1.6 SRA Report

After completing the SRA process, the owner/operator shall provide a report detailing the information and recommendations developed by the SRA team, which shall be incorporated into the project planning and design documentation. The report shall include:

1.2-4.1.6.1 Resident and caregiver safety risks identified by the SRA. See Section 1.2-4.1.5.1 (Identify hazards).

1.2-4.1.6.2 Design features that contribute to the identified hazards and risks. The requirements in Section 1.2-4.1.5.2 (Evaluate risks from identified hazards) shall be applied.

1.2-4.1.6.3 Design strategies to reduce, mitigate, or eliminate identified hazards and risks. The requirements in Section 1.2-4.1.6.3 (Generate solutions) shall be applied.

1.2-4.1.7 SRA Compliance

1.2-4.1.7.1 SRA documentation

- (1) Written records shall remain an active part of the project documents for the duration of design, construction, and commissioning.
- (2) The conclusions in the written report shall:
- (a) Be incorporated into the functional and physical space programs.
 - (b) Remain an active component of the following project documents:
 - (i) Planning, design, equipment, and furniture specifications
 - (ii) Construction documentation
 - (iii) Commissioning records
 - (iv) Postoccupancy evaluation documents

1.2-4.1.7.2 SRA communication

- (1) The SRA team shall provide updates to the planners and designers for compliance with additional levels of detail generated during the project for all safety components listed in Table 1.2-1 (Safety Risk Assessment Components).
- (2) Changes to the original design plans and as-built documentation, including changes in identified risks and solutions, shall be documented, updated, and continually shared between the SRA team and the designers, planners, owner/operator, and contractor.

1.2-4.2 Infection Control Risk Assessment (ICRA)

1.2-4.2.1 General

1.2-4.2.1.1 ICRA requirement. For a facility project to support safe designs, finishes, surfaces, HVAC systems, and plumbing systems, an infection control risk assessment (ICRA) shall be part of the safety risk assessment.

1.2-4.2.1.2 ICRA recommendations. Based on the results of the initial stage of the ICRA, the owner/operator shall provide the following recommendations for incorporation into the safety risk assessment:

- (1) Design recommendations generated by the ICRA
- (2) Infection control risk mitigation recommendations (ICRMRs). See Section 1.2-4.2.3 (Infection Control Risk Mitigation).

1.2-4.2.2 ICRA Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

The owner/operator shall provide the results of an evaluation of infection control risk for the following elements for incorporation into the functional program:

1.2-4.2.2.1 Design elements

- (1) Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems
 - (a) Airborne infection isolation (AII) rooms
 - (i) The number and location of AII rooms shall be determined by the ICRA.
 - (ii) For ventilation requirements, see Section 2.1-2.2.5.1 (6)(c) (Airborne infection isolation room: Special design elements—Ventilation).
 - (iii) The ICRA shall determine if an anteroom is to be provided for each AII room.
 - (b) Special HVAC needs to accommodate the services provided in or affected by the project (e.g., HVAC needs for AII rooms, pharmacies, local exhaust systems for areas where hazardous agents are present, and other special areas) shall be identified.
 - (c) Strategies for design of HVAC systems, including those intended to reduce energy costs, shall include development of designs that minimize the risk of airborne transmission of biological agents.
- (2) Water/plumbing systems and hand sanitation dispensers
 - (a) The number, location, and type of handwashing stations, hand sanitation dispensers, and emergency first-aid equipment (eyewash stations and deluge showers) needed shall be identified.
 - (b) Strategies for design of water systems or water conservation systems shall include development of designs that minimize the risk of waterborne transmission of *Legionella spp.* and other opportunistic pathogens.
- (3) Architectural details, surfaces, and furnishings
 - (a) Characteristics related to infection prevention for selection of materials for surfaces and furnishings shall be addressed in the ICRA.
 - (b) See sections 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations), 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces), and 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins) for details.

1.2-4.2.2.2 Construction elements. When conducting the ICRA and developing infection control risk mitigation recommendations (see Section 1.2-4.2.3.1) for building and site areas anticipated to be affected by construction, the following shall be addressed:

- (1) Effects of disrupting essential services to residents and staff
- (2) Specific hazards and protection levels for each designated area
- (3) Location of residents according to their susceptibility to infection and the identification of risks to each
- (4) Impact of movement of debris, traffic flow, spill cleanup, and testing and certification of installed systems
- (5) Assessment of external and internal construction activities
- (6) Location of known hazards

1.2-4.2.3 Infection Control Risk Mitigation

The following shall be included in the SRA report:

1.2-4.2.3.1 Infection control risk mitigation recommendations. These written plans shall describe the specific methods for avoiding transmission of airborne and waterborne biological contaminants during construction as well as during commissioning, when HVAC and plumbing systems and equipment (e.g., ice machines) are started/restarted.

1.2-4.2.3.2 Reserved

1.2-4.2.3.3 ICRMR content. ICRMRs shall, at minimum, indicate how the following issues will be addressed during construction:

- (1) Resident proximity to construction activities and potential need for resident relocation
- (2) Standards for barriers and other protective measures required to protect adjacent areas and susceptible residents from airborne contaminants
- (3) Temporary provisions or phasing for construction or modification of HVAC and water supply systems
- (4) Protection from demolition
- (5) Training for staff, visitors, and construction personnel
- (6) The impact of potential utility outages or emergencies, including the need to protect residents during planned and unplanned utility outages and evacuation
- (7) The impact of movement of debris, traffic flow, cleanup, elevator use for construction materials and construction workers, and construction worker routes
- (8) Provisions for use of bathroom and food facilities by construction workers
- (9) Installation of clean materials (particularly ductwork, drywall, and wood/paper/fabric materials) that have not been damaged by water

1.2-4.2.3.4 Monitoring plans and procedures

- (1) The owner/operator shall provide monitoring plans for effective application of ICRMRs during the course of the project.
- (2) Provisions for monitoring infection control risk shall include:
 - (a) Written procedures for emergency suspension of work
 - (b) Protective measures indicating the responsibilities and limitations of each party (owner/operator, designer, contractor, monitor)

1.2-4.3 Resident Mobility and Transfer Risk Assessment

1.2-4.3.1 Locations to Be Assessed

Resident mobility and transfer risk evaluation shall address the specific needs of all areas affected by the project where resident transfers and mobilization occur, including but not limited to the following:

1.2-4.3.1.1 Resident rooms and toilet rooms

1.2-4.3.1.2 Residential living and community spaces (e.g., dining and recreation areas), including associated toilet and bathing areas

1.2-4.3.1.3 Exam/treatment rooms and other diagnostic and treatment areas

1.2-4.3.1.4 Wellness centers

1.2-4.3.1.5 Outdoor areas

1.2-4.3.1.6 Hallways and corridors

1.2-4.3.2 Mobility and Mobilization Concerns

The following shall be evaluated for all areas where resident mobility and transfers occur:

1.2-4.3.2.1 Design recommendations

- (1) Architectural solutions that support safe mobility and transfer. Implementation of any architectural solution that supports ambulation and incentivizes mobility and ambulation using the equipment available on-site shall be considered.
- (2) Furnishings that support safe mobility and transfer. Provision of any furnishings that offer usable alternatives to extended bed-stays shall be considered.
- (3) Minimization of physical environment impediments to resident, patient, and participant mobility and mobilization. Evaluation of the cognitive ability of the care population shall be included in determining how impediments can be minimized for a particular facility.

1.2-4.3.2.2 Resident mobility and transfer equipment

- (1) Types of equipment
- (2) Quantity of each type of equipment
- (3) Weight-carrying capacities of each type of equipment

- (4) Storage for mobility devices. The need for storage accessible by staff and residents for lift systems and related equipment and for resident-operated mobility devices shall be determined by evaluating equipment use in the facility.

1.2-4.3.2.3 Coordination between mobility and transfer equipment and other aspects of the physical environment

- (1) Building systems. Resident mobility and transfer equipment installations shall be evaluated for conflict with plumbing, mechanical, electrical, communication, and life safety system equipment installations.
- (2) Environment of care characteristics. The effects of the installation and use of resident mobility and transfer equipment on the environment of care characteristics listed in Section 1.2-5.5 (Environment of Care Requirements—Physical Environment Elements) shall be evaluated.
- (3) Aesthetics. The effects of the installation and use of resident mobility and transfer equipment on the aesthetics of the resident care space shall be evaluated.
- (4) Bed safety. The configuration of beds being used shall be evaluated based on the care population to reduce the risk of injury related to bed rails, mattresses, and bed configurations.

1.2-4.4 Fall Risk and Prevention Assessment

1.2-4.4.1 Fall Risk and Prevention Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

An evaluation of fall risk and prevention shall address the following specific design elements:

1.2-4.4.1.1 Flooring characteristics. See sections 2.1-7.2.1.2 (Characteristics and criteria for selecting materials and products) and 2.1-7.2.3.1 (Flooring and wall bases) for information.

1.2-4.4.1.2 Furniture characteristics. See sections 2.1-7.2.1.2 (Characteristics and criteria for selecting materials and products) and 2.1-7.2.4 (Furnishings) for information.

1.2-4.5 Medication Safety Assessment

1.2-4.5.1 Medication Safety Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

Medication safety recommendations for a new construction or renovation project shall be included in the SRA report.

1.2-4.5.1.1 Medication distribution and storage locations. The number of locations for medication distribution and storage shall be included in the medication safety plan.

1.2-4.5.1.2 Design features. See Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings, and the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for specific requirements for centralized and decentralized medication distribution and storage locations.

1.2-4.6 Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment

1.2-4.6.1 Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

1.2-4.6.1.1 Each program area shall be evaluated to identify the physical environment features accessible to residents to be addressed as a potential risk to residents with dementia or behavioral and mental health conditions. Features to be assessed shall include the following:

- (1) Architectural details
- (2) Hardware and surfaces
- (3) Furnishings
- (4) Plumbing, mechanical, fire protection, and electrical devices and components

1.2-4.6.1.2 One of the following shall be used to evaluate dementia and behavioral and mental health risk:

- (1) “Behavioral Health Design Guide,” published by Behavioral Health Facility Consulting, LLC
- (2) *Patient Safety Standards, Materials and Systems Guidelines*, recommended by the New York State Office of Mental Health

1.2-4.6.2 Design Considerations

1.2-4.6.2.1 The design of care settings for residents with Alzheimer’s and other forms of dementia, behavioral and mental health issues, or cognitive and developmental disabilities shall address the need for a safe living and care environment for those who may present unique challenges and risks due to their condition.

1.2-4.6.2.2 The resident environment shall be designed to protect residents’ experience of choice, dignity, privacy, meaningful engagement, and courtesy and address potential risks related to resident elopement and harm to self, others, and the care environment.

1.2-4.6.2.3 Evaluation of harm

- (1) An evaluation of the means available to reduce the possibility of residents causing unacceptable levels of harm to themselves or others, including suicide risks, shall be completed.
- (2) Simultaneous consideration of the following elements shall be part of the evaluation:
 - (a) Resident profile and acuity
 - (b) Staffing levels
 - (c) Space visibility and supervision
 - (d) Inherent danger from any individual physical environment feature

1.2-4.6.3 Design Elements

Evaluation of resident dementia and behavioral and mental health risk shall address the following specific design elements:

1.2-4.6.3.1 Security systems and monitoring

1.2-4.6.3.2 Areas to be secured

1.2-4.6.3.3 Features that deter elopement and unsafe exiting

1.2-4.6.3.4 Doors and windows to be secured

1.2-4.6.3.5 Physical environment means to address resident stress and agitation

1.2-4.6.4 Additional Requirements

See sections 2.1-2.1.2.2 (2) (Physical environment elements for risk reduction), 2.1-2.1.2.3 (2) (Physical environment elements for risk reduction), and 2.1-8.5 (Communication Systems) for additional requirements.

1.2-4.7 Security Risk Assessment

Security recommendations for a new construction or renovation project shall be included in the SRA report.

1.2-4.7.1 Security Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

1.2-4.7.1.1 Security considerations for project planning

- (1) The security risk assessment shall include a comprehensive security plan that indicates a layered approach to access control, including zones, control points, circulation routes, and required egress paths.
- (2) The security plan shall include the following:
 - (a) A description of the effects of demolition and phasing on existing site functions and protection efforts
 - (b) An assessment of the need for temporary security barriers such as fencing and security systems, including intrusion detection and video surveillance systems
 - (c) A schedule for installation of security systems for completion during move-in activities to allow for protection of the facility and equipment

1.2-4.7.1.2 Security considerations for project design

- (1) Parking and exterior spaces. See Section 1.3-3.3 (Site—Parking) for requirements.
- (2) Buildings and interior spaces
 - (a) Residential care and support areas. The security risk assessment shall address the particular risks in the physical environment that are associated with the resident care population and demographics, facility needs expressed in the functional program, characteristics of the surrounding community, and other environmental factors.
 - (b) Protected health information
 - (i) The security risk assessment shall address handling of all forms of protected health information.
 - (ii) The security risk assessment shall address ways in which this information could be compromised and shall apply integrated physical and electronic security systems (e.g., access and audit features), as appropriate, to locations for charting, care planning and management, record storage, and waste collection/disposal as well as in data systems (e.g., electronic health records).

- (c) Utility, mechanical, and infrastructure-related spaces. See Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) for additional information and requirements.
- (d) Biological and chemical materials
 - (i) The security risk assessment shall address the unique security risks presented by the presence of hazardous materials, including biological and chemical materials.
 - (ii) Facilities shall be designed and constructed to provide integrated physical security, protect the internal and external environment and the surrounding community, and assist in the audit of materials in accordance with policy, regulation, best practices, and assessed risk.

1.2-4.8 Disaster, Emergency, and Vulnerability Assessment

1.2-4.8.1 Disaster, Emergency, and Vulnerability Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

1.2-4.8.1.1 Anticipated hazards

- (1) The multidisciplinary SRA team shall review the organization's hazard vulnerability assessment in conjunction with the development of the DEVA.
- (2) The DEVA shall identify anticipated hazards specific to a facility based on its geographic location.

1.2-4.8.1.2 Design features. Design features that provide resilience, hardening, flexibility, and adaptability during a disaster or emergency event shall be identified.

1.2-4.8.2 Disaster, Emergency, and Vulnerability Response

The design team shall incorporate identified disaster and emergency-related design features in the project design documents.

1.2-5 Environment of Care Requirements

1.2-5.1 Delivery of Care Model Concepts

1.2-5.1.1 The delivery of care model to be used in the residential care and support facility shall be described in the functional program and shall note how the care model and environment support:-

1.2-5.1.1.1 Care and activities

1.2-5.1.1.2 Staff, residents, companions, and community involvement

1.2-5.1.1.3 Staff empowerment

1.2-5.1.1.4 Measurement-based continuous quality improvement (CQI) processes

1.2-5.1.2 A description of the physical elements and key functional relationships necessary to support the intended delivery of care model to be used in the residential care and support setting shall **also** be provided and shall note:-

1.2-5.1.2.1 Environment of care

1.2-5.1.2.2 Environmental therapeutic goals

1.2-5.1.3 ~~6.7~~ Planning Considerations for Resident Quality of Life

The core values of the delivery of care model shall be applied in planning and designing residential care and support settings. At minimum, these values shall include the following:

1.2-5.1.3.1 ~~6.7.1~~ Choice and control

1.2-5.1.3.2 ~~6.7.2~~ Comfort, well-being, and dignity

1.2-5.1.3.3 ~~6.7.3~~ Privacy and respect

1.2-5.1.3.4 ~~6.7.4~~ Meaningful engagement

1.2-5.1.3.5 ~~6.7.5~~ Courtesy and concern

1.2-5.1.3.6 ~~6.7.6~~ Community

1.2-5.2 User Accommodations

Design criteria shall be described that will support development of a facility that facilitates ease of use by residents, patients, family members, visitors, and staff.

1.2-5.3 Systems Design

1.2-5.3.1 Design criteria for organizational, technological, and building systems necessary to support quality of life and symptom management consistent with the delivery of care model shall be described.

1.2-5.3.2 The owner/operator shall develop and maintain an integrated technology narrative to support user experience, operational workflow, building systems, and infrastructure.

1.2-5.4 Layout/Operational Planning

Design criteria shall be described for the layout necessary to enhance operational efficiencies and the satisfaction of residents, patients, families, and staff.

1.2-5.5 Physical Environment Elements

The physical environment shall be designed in response to the functional program, including the intended delivery of care model, and shall address the key elements listed below:

1.2-5.5.1 Light

1.2-5.5.2 Views of and Access to Nature

1.2-5.5.2.1 Outdoor space

(1) Outdoor space or a suitable alternative shall be provided for residents, visitors, and staff.

(2) Such spaces shall allow for visual observation by staff.

1.2-5.5.2.2 A common area with daylighting features and a view to the outdoors or suitable alternative shall be provided.

1.2-5.5.3 ~~Signage and~~ Wayfinding

1.2-5.5.3.1 An organized approach to wayfinding/clarity of access for the entire campus or facility shall be provided.

1.2-5.5.3.2 The wayfinding approach shall include an integrated system with coordinated wayfinding elements.

1.2-5.5.4 User Control of Environment

1.2-5.5.5 Privacy and Confidentiality

Private space(s) shall be provided for all communication concerning personal information relative to resident illness, care plans, life programming, insurance, and financial matters.

1.2-5.5.5.1 ~~Methods for protecting~~ In areas where medical issues of residents are communicated, visual and auditory privacy and confidentiality shall be provided ~~shall be included in the design of the physical environment.~~

1.2-5.5.5.2 In facilities with multiple-resident rooms, a separate space shall be provided to give residents and families a place with both visual and auditory privacy.

1.2-5.5.6 Safety and Security

See Section 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for requirements.

1.2-5.5.7 Characteristics and Criteria for Selection of Materials and Products for Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

See Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) for specific requirements.

1.2-5.5.8 ~~Reserved~~ Cultural Responsiveness

1.2-5.5.9 Support for Person-Centered Care

See Section 1.2-5.1.3 (Planning Considerations for Resident Quality of Life) for core values information.

1.2-6 Planning Considerations and Requirements

1.2-6.1 Acoustic Design

1.2-6.1.1 General

1.2-6.1.1.1 ~~New and renovated~~ The planning and design of new residential care and support facilities and the retrofitting of existing residential care and support facilities ~~and the retrofitting of existing facilities~~ shall conform to the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* and all applicable codes and regulations with respect to exterior environmental sound and interior sound in all occupied building spaces.

1.2-6.1.1.2 Acoustic design requirements in Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) shall be reviewed and documented.

1.2-6.1.1.3~~2~~ Acoustic planning

- (1) The planning of new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include identification of acoustic needs during the programming phase to determine desired outcomes based on the resident care population.
- (2) The planning process for new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include:
 - (a) Evaluation of building location related to exterior noise
 - (b) Evaluation of interior noise sources, including the following:
 - (i) Elevators and their proximity to resident rooms
 - (ii) HVAC fans, [PTACs](#), and other MEP building systems
 - (iii) Noise-generating appliances, whether for private, communal, or facility use
 - (iv) Community and staff workspaces proximate to resident rooms
 - (c) Verification of compliance with the functional program needs of the care population and staff

1.2-6.1.2 Site Exterior Noise

1.2-6.1.2.1 Existing exterior noise sources. Planning and design of new facilities and retrofitting of existing facilities shall include due consideration of all existing exterior noise sources that may be transmitted from outside a building to its interior through the exterior shell (i.e., exterior walls, windows, doors, roofs, ventilation openings, and other shell penetrations).

1.2-6.1.2.2 Facility noise source emissions. Planning and design shall include consideration of sound emissions from facility noise sources that reach nearby residences and other sensitive receptors.

1.2-6.1.2.3 Exterior noise classifications

- (1) Exterior noise classifications shall be used to identify the degree of sound attenuation required in the building facade due to the sources of exterior noise, including sources being added by the facility. Exterior site noise exposure categories shall be as identified in Table 1.2-3 (Categorization of Residential Care and Support Facility Sites by Exterior Ambient Sound with Design Criteria for Sound Isolation of Exterior Shell in New Construction).
- (2) The building facade's sound isolation performance shall depend on the site classification and shall comply with minimum exterior shell composite sound transmission ratings, either OITCc or STCc, as shown in Table 1.2-3.

1.2-6.1.3 Design Criteria for Acoustic Finishes

Facility spaces identified in Table 1.2-4 (Minimum Design Room-Average Sound Absorption Coefficients) shall incorporate permanent acoustic finishes that achieve design room-average sound absorption coefficients.

1.2-6.1.4 Design Criteria for Room Noise Levels

1.2-6.1.4.1 Room noise levels caused by HVAC and other building systems shall not exceed the maximum values shown in Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems).

1.2-6.1.4.2 Room noise levels shall be determined for unoccupied rooms (e.g., a hospice patient room without operating medical equipment).

1.2-6.1.5 Design Criteria for Performance of Interior Wall and Floor/Ceiling Constructions

1.2-6.1.5.1 Sound isolation shall be considered for all occupied spaces adjacent to construction activities.

1.2-6.1.5.2 The composite sound transmission class (STC_c) of demising wall assemblies shall not be less than the ratings indicated in Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).

1.2-6.1.6 Design Guidelines for Speech Privacy

Designated spaces in which protected health information will be conveyed shall be designed to meet speech privacy goals using one of the four speech privacy rating methods as shown in Table 1.2-7 (Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces).

1.2-6.1.7 Design Criteria for Building Vibration

1.2-6.1.7.1 General. Seismic restraint covered elsewhere in the FGI *Facility Code* shall be compatible with vibration isolation methods covered in this section.

1.2-6.1.7.2 Vibration control and isolation. Vibration levels in the building shall not exceed applicable guidelines and limits outlined in this section.

(1) Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing equipment vibration

- (a) All fixed building equipment that rotates or vibrates shall be considered for vibration isolation.
- (b) Equipment bases, isolators, and isolator static deflections shall be selected based on the proximity of the supported equipment to vibration- and noise-sensitive areas, structural design of the facility, and type and operating point of the equipment.
 - (i) The recommendations in the *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications* shall be considered when selecting types of bases, isolators, and isolator static deflections.
 - (ii) More stringent requirements shall be considered for equipment impacting sensitive areas.

(2) Structural vibration

- (a) Impact insulation class ratings of floor-ceiling assemblies between dwelling units or between a dwelling unit and a public or service area above it shall be considered in the design.
- (b) Where medical or laboratory instrumentation is used in a residential health, care, or support setting, more stringent vibration criteria shall be considered.

(3) Structure-borne sound

- (a) Structure-borne transmitted sound shall not exceed the limits for airborne sound presented in Section 1.2-6.1.4 (Design Criteria for Room Noise Levels).
- (b) Where necessary, vibration isolators shall be used to control potential sources of structure-borne sound.

1.2-6.1.7.3 Ground-borne vibration. Exterior sources of ground vibration, such as road and rail traffic, shall be considered in the site selection and design of a facility. See Chapter 1.3 (Site) for additional requirements.

1.2-6.2 Lighting Design

1.2-6.2.1 General

Daylight and artificial lighting needs shall be identified during the programming phase of design to determine desired visual and health outcomes based on the care population.

1.2-6.2.2 Lighting Planning Process

The process for lighting planning for new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include the following:

1.2-6.2.2.1 Evaluation of the effects of site conditions and building orientation on lighting needs. See Section 1.2-2.2.3.2 (1) (Functional Requirements—Site) for requirements.

1.2-6.2.2.2 Evaluation of means for providing the care population and staff with access to daylighting

(1) Access to daylighting shall be provided. See sections 1.2-5.5.1 (Physical Environment Elements—Light) and 1.2-5.5.2 (Physical Environment Elements—Views of and Access to Nature) for additional information.

(2) Daylighting goals shall be established for the project.

(3) Fenestration, types of glazing, and window treatments for exterior windows and doors shall be evaluated in relation to the use of interior spaces to assure access to daylight is provided.

1.2-6.2.2.3 Verification that artificial lighting and daylighting in a project respond to the needs of the care population described in the functional program

1.2-6.2.3 Lighting Design Requirements

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7 (Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems) shall apply.

1.2-6.3 Sustainable Design

1.2-6.3.1 General

Planning for new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include establishment of sustainability goals by an integrated stakeholder team.

1.2-6.3.2 Sustainability Planning Process

The planning process for new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include establishing sustainability goals for the ~~facility~~ [setting by a multidisciplinary team](#).

1.2-6.3.3 Site Selection and Development

1.2-6.3.3.1 Environmental impacts. The site design shall be developed to minimize negative environmental impacts associated with buildings and related site development.

1.2-6.3.3.2 Site development considerations. Site development considerations shall include the following:

- (1) Land use
- (2) Stormwater management
- (3) Habitat preservation
- (4) Landscape design and irrigation systems
- (5) Shading
- (6) Natural ventilation
- (7) Renewable energy use
- (8) Mitigation of effects from heat islands
- (9) Resilience based on geographic location, building type, and risk (e.g., flooding, weather, fire)

1.2-6.3.4 Evaluation of Conservation Measures

1.2-6.3.4.1 To reduce energy consumption, the site and building orientation shall be evaluated for potential solar and wind energy feasibility and subsequent installations.

1.2-6.3.4.2 The orientation of the buildings on the site shall be evaluated to maximize use of daylighting.

1.2-6.3.4.3 Landscape areas shall be evaluated for irrigation needs and estimated water consumption.

1.2-6.3.5 Energy Efficiency

1.2-6.3.5.1 ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, as adopted by the U.S. Department of Energy, shall be used in the absence of a locally or state-adopted energy code.

General

~~(1) Energy efficiency goals shall be considered in all phases of facility development or renovation.~~

~~(2) Architectural elements that reduce energy consumption shall be considered as part of facility design.~~

1.2-6.3.5.2 Equipment selection

- (1) Mechanical and electrical systems shall be selected and sized to reduce energy demand and consumption.
- (2) Products shall comply with the minimum efficiencies addressed in one or more of the following:
 - (a) National Appliance Energy Conservation Act
 - (b) Energy Policy Act
 - (c) Energy Independence and Security Act

1.2-6.3.6 Potable Water Quality and Conservation

1.2-6.3.6.1 General

- (1) Potable water quality and conservation strategies shall be evaluated in all phases of facility development or renovation.
- (2) Design for water conservation shall not adversely affect resident health, safety, or infection prevention.
- (3) The use of plumbing fixtures with flow rates lower than legally required (e.g., “low-flow fixtures”) shall be prohibited.

~~1.2-6.3.6.2 Water measurement devices~~

~~1.2-6.3.6.3 Plumbing fixtures and fittings. Evaluate plumbing fixtures and fittings to maximize water conservation based on the care population.~~

1.2-6.3.6.24 Water recovery options. Where potable water is used, evaluate once-through cooling equipment for water recovery options.

1.2-6.3.7 Indoor Environmental Quality

1.2-6.3.7.1 Indoor air quality planning process. The planning process for new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include:

- (1) Evaluation of how the care population will be affected by indoor air quality
- (2) Establishment of indoor air quality goals for the facility

1.2-6.3.7.2 Indoor air quality. Planning for new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include identification of all interior factors and building systems that affect indoor air quality.

- (1) Ventilation. See Section 2.1-8.2 (Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning Systems) and the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for the following:
 - (a) Minimum ventilation requirements
 - (b) Minimum filtration requirements
- ~~(2) Building entry mats. Building entrances, except entrances to individual dwelling units and service areas, shall employ an entry mat or entry mat system to reduce particulates in the indoor environment.
 - ~~(a) Omission of mats shall be permitted at secondary entrances or entrances with minimal pedestrian traffic.~~
 - ~~(b) No surface shall be used that impedes resident ambulation or contributes to fall risks.~~
 - ~~(c) Mat size. Each surface shall have a minimum width equivalent to the width of the entry opening.~~~~

1.2-6.3.8 Building Materials and Resources

1.2-6.3.8.1 Building materials selection. See Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) for requirements.

1.2-6.3.8.2 Collection and storage of recyclables

- (1) For new building projects, there shall be areas serving the entire building that are dedicated to the collection and storage of non-hazardous materials for recycling, including paper, corrugated cardboard, glass, plastics, and metals.
- (2) ~~Fluorescent and high intensity discharge lamps and ballasts~~
 - (a) An area shall be provided for the collection and storage of fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lamps and ballasts.
 - (b) ~~Accessibility of the area shall~~ to facilitate proper disposal and recycling according to state and local hazardous waste requirements.

1.2-6.3.9 Emissions

1.2-6.3.9.1 Refrigerants

- (1) Use of chlorofluorocarbon-based refrigerants shall ~~not be permitted in HVAC and refrigerating systems except in small HVAC units (defined as containing less than 0.5 pounds [0.23 kilograms] of refrigerant).~~ be permitted in equipment such as standard refrigerators, small water coolers, and other cooling equipment that contains less than 0.5 pounds (0.23 kilograms) of refrigerant.
- (2) ~~Use of chlorofluorocarbon-based refrigerants shall~~ Use of chlorofluorocarbon-refrigerants shall not be permitted in HVAC and refrigerating systems except in small HVAC units (defined a containing less than 0.5 pounds [0.23 kilograms] of refrigerant). ~~be permitted in equipment such as standard refrigerators, small water coolers, and other cooling equipment that contains less than 0.5 pounds (0.23 kilograms) of refrigerant.~~

1.2-6.3.9.2 Greenhouse gas. Strategies to reduce the effects of climate change through reduction of greenhouse gas emissions (primarily carbon dioxide) shall be considered in building design and selection of mechanical equipment.

1.2-6.4 Signage ~~and Wayfinding~~

1.2-6.4.1 See Section 1.2-5.5.3 (~~Signage and~~ Wayfinding) for environment of care requirements.

1.2-6.4.2 Signage shall be consistent with all local, state, and federal regulations.

1.2-6.4.3 Strategically placed interior and exterior signage as well as visual environment and surface-applied cues shall be provided for resident and visitor orientation.

1.2-6.5 Planning Considerations for Accommodation of Individuals of Size

1.2-6.5.1 General

If it has been indicated in the functional program that a facility will accommodate individuals of size, the following shall be identified and evaluated:

1.2-6.5.1.1 Areas of the facility designated for accommodations for care of individuals of size

1.2-6.5.1.2 Projected number of rooms required to accommodate individuals of size

1.2-6.5.1.3 Projected number of expanded-capacity lifts required

1.2-6.5.1.4 Paths of egress to reach areas supporting the needs of individuals of size

1.2-6.5.1.5 The projected maximum weight of individuals of size who will require accommodation shall determine the design requirements for sinks, toilets, grab bars, casework, and lifts in areas where individuals of size will receive care.

1.2-6.5.2 Planning Process for Accommodations for Individuals of Size

The areas identified in Section 1.2-6.5.1 (Planning Considerations for Accommodation of Individuals of Size—General) shall be programmed and planned with clearances for use of equipment that provides appropriate weight support.

1.2-6.5.3 Design Requirements for Accommodations for Individuals of Size

See Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for care of individuals of size) for other requirements.

1.2-6.6 Planning Considerations for Individuals with Dementia, Behavioral and Mental Health Issues, and Cognitive and Developmental Disabilities

1.2-6.6.1 General

Planning for new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include establishment of goals by an integrated stakeholder team for individuals with dementia, behavioral and mental health issues, and cognitive and developmental disabilities.

1.2-6.6.2 Planning Process for Accommodations for Individuals with Dementia, Behavioral and Mental Health Issues, and Cognitive and Developmental Disabilities

1.2-6.6.2.1 See Section 1.2-2.2.1.2 (1) (Functional Program—Who will be served...) for planning requirements.

1.2-6.6.2.2 See Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment) for safety risk assessment requirements.

1.2-6.6.3 Design Requirements for Accommodations for Individuals with Dementia, Behavioral and Mental Health Issues, and Cognitive and Developmental Disabilities

See sections 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and cognitive and developmental disabilities) and 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) for other requirements.

1.2-6.7 Planning Considerations for Resident Quality of Life

~~The core values of the delivery of care model shall be applied in planning and designing residential health, care, and support facilities. At minimum, these values shall include the following:~~

~~1.2-6.7.1 Choice and control~~

~~1.2-6.7.2 Comfort, well-being, and dignity~~

~~1.2-6.7.3 Privacy and respect~~

~~1.2-6.7.4 Meaningful engagement~~

~~1.2-6.7.5 Courtesy and concern~~

~~1.2-6.7.6~~ Community

~~1.2-6.7.8~~ Planning Considerations for Inclusive Environments

~~Provision of inclusive design~~ Design features that promote inclusivity shall be ~~provided~~ considered in the planning and design of resident, patient, and participant care areas and staff areas. The following design concepts shall be applied to design development:

1.2-6.7.1 Inclusive Design. A planning and design process that recognizes, respects, supports, and anticipates peoples' diverse and varying characteristics and capabilities in the context of changing demands imposed by complex adaptive systems shall be utilized that includes a codesign process with people offering diverse perspectives, particularly those who are traditionally excluded from being able to access, use, or navigate an environment.

1.2-6.7.2 Universal Design

1.2-6.7.2.1 The planning and design process shall include an evaluation of care populations in residential care or support facilities to provide an opportunity to apply universal design principles (i.e., those appropriate to any age or ability) to design variables such as walking distances, use of color, value contrast, lighting, wayfinding, and selection of finishes.

1.2-6.7.2.2 The universal design process shall enable and empower a diverse population by improving human performance, health and wellness, and social participation.

1.2-6.7.3 Barrier-Free Design

The architectural design—through the organization of functional space, the specification of ergonomically appropriate and arranged furniture and equipment, and selection of details and finishes—shall eliminate as many barriers as possible to comply with accessibility standards, afford physical and perceptual access, provide functional use to all space, services, equipment, and utilities appropriate for daily living by persons with physical, perceptual, or sensory impairments.

1.2-7 Renovation

~~1.2-7.16~~ Existing Conditions

Existing conditions and operations shall be documented prior to initiation of renovation and new construction projects. This shall include documentation of existing mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and structural capacities and quantities.

~~1.2-7.25~~ Nonconforming Conditions

It is not always financially feasible to renovate an entire existing structure in accordance with the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*. Therefore, authorities having jurisdiction shall be permitted to grant approval for renovation of a portion of a building as long as preexisting features in unrenovated areas do not jeopardize facility operations and resident safety in renovated areas.

~~1.2-7.34~~ Phasing

Projects involving renovation of existing buildings shall use phasing to minimize disruption of existing resident services.

1.2-7.31.1 Phasing Provisions

Phasing provisions shall include:

1.2-7.31.1.1 Clean-to-dirty airflow

1.2-7.31.1.2 Emergency procedures

1.2-7.31.1.3 Criteria for interruption of protection

1.2-7.31.1.4 Construction of roof surfaces

1.2-7.31.1.5 Written notification of interruptions

1.2-7.31.1.6 Communication authority

1.2-7.3.2 Noise and Vibration

Phasing plans shall include consideration of noise and vibration control during construction activities.

1.2-7.4.2 Isolation of Construction Areas

During construction, renovation areas shall be isolated from occupied areas based on an infection control risk assessment. See Section 1.2-4.2 (Infection Control Risk Assessment) for requirements.

1.2-7.5.3 Maintenance of Air Quality

Existing air quality requirements for occupied areas shall be maintained during any renovation or construction.

1.2-7.6.4 Maintenance of Utilities

Existing utility requirements for occupied areas shall be maintained during any renovation or construction.

1.2-8 Record Drawings and Manuals

1.2-8.1 Drawings

1.2-8.1.1 Record Drawings

Upon occupancy of the building or a portion thereof, the owner/operator shall receive a complete set of as-built documents that shows construction, fixed equipment, and mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and structural systems that reflect known changes from the construction documents.

1.2-8.1.2 Life Safety Overlay

Drawings shall include a life safety plan for each floor that reflects NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code* requirements.

1.2-8.2 Equipment Information

Upon completion of the contract, the owner/operator shall be furnished with the following for each piece of equipment installed as part of the project:

1.2-8.2.1 Operations and maintenance manual

1.2-8.2.2 Parts list

1.2-8.2.3 Model number and description

1.2-8.2.4 Instruction manual for operating staff

1.2-8.3 Design Data

The owner/operator shall receive a complete set of design data for the facility, including the following:

1.2-8.3.1 Structural design loads

1.2-8.3.2 Summary of heat loss assumption and calculations

1.2-8.3.3 Estimated water consumption

1.2-8.3.4 Medical gas outlet list, if applicable to the residential care and support facility

1.2-8.3.5 List of applicable codes

1.2-8.3.6 Electric power requirements of installed equipment

1.2-9 Commissioning

1.2-9.1 Commissioning Activities

At minimum, the following commissioning activities shall be undertaken:

1.2-9.1.1 Development of the Owner/Operator's Project Requirements (OPR)

The owner/operator shall develop the OPR.

1.2-9.1.1.1 The OPR shall identify the building systems and elements to be commissioned as part of the project scope.

1.2-9.1.1.2 The OPR shall define the parameters required to meet the owner/operator's expectations, including the following:

- (1) Performance
- (2) Operations
- (3) Maintenance
- (4) Longevity
- (5) Energy and water efficiency

1.2-9.1.2 Preparation of the Basis of Design (BOD)

In response to the OPR, the design team shall prepare a BOD narrative describing the design intent and systems to be commissioned. The BOD narrative shall include, at minimum, the following elements:

1.2-9.1.2.1 Description of the systems, components, and methods used to meet the OPR

1.2-9.1.2.2 Levels of redundancy planned

1.2-9.1.2.3 Limitations and restrictions of systems and assemblies assumed

1.2-9.1.2.4 Indoor and outdoor conditions assumed (e.g., space temperature, relative humidity, lighting power density, glazing fraction, U-value and shading coefficient, wall and ceiling R-values, ventilation and infiltration rates)

1.2-9.1.2.5 Description of emergency operation intended. See Table 1.2-1 (Safety Risk Assessment Components) for additional information.

1.2-9.1.3 Preparation of Commissioning Plan, Commissioning Specifications, and Construction Checklists

1.2-9.1.3.1 **Commissioning plan.** This document shall establish the scope, structure, and schedule of the commissioning activities and address how the commissioning process will verify that the OPR and BOD are achieved.

1.2-9.1.3.2 **Commissioning specifications.** These specifications shall establish requirements for physical environment elements to be included in the project scope and identify responsibilities related to commissioning.

1.2-9.1.3.3 **Construction checklists.** These documents shall establish inspections and individual component tests that will be used to verify proper functioning of physical environment elements that have been installed or modified.

1.2-9.1.4 Performance of Functional/Operational Tests

Testing of the dynamic function and operation of the physical environment elements under full operation shall be performed. Elements shall be tested in various modes included in the OPR and run through all sequences of operation.

1.2-9.1.5 Preparation of the Commissioning Report

A commissioning report shall be prepared and presented to the owner/operator to formally document the following:

1.2-9.1.5.1 Description of systems commissioned

1.2-9.1.5.2 Performance of the physical environment elements

1.2-9.1.5.3 Performance issues identified

1.2-9.1.5.4 Mitigation or resolution of performance issues

1.2-9.1.5.5 Maintenance staff training to achieve operational sustainability

1.2-9.1.5.6 Compliance with the OPR and BOD

1.2-9.2 Commissioning Agent

If commissioning is completed for a project, it shall be led by an independent commissioning agent with experience and expertise relevant to the project.

Table 1.2-2: Setting Type Characteristics

<u>Setting Type</u>	<u>Typical Number of Occupants (Excluding Staff) Who Reside on a 24-Hour Basis</u>	<u>(De)centralized Services</u>	<u>Distinguishing Features</u>
<u>Group Home</u>	<u>5 or fewer</u>	<u>Not applicable</u>	<u>Similar to a single-family residential home</u>
<u>Residential Model</u>	<u>16 or fewer</u>	<u>Not applicable</u>	<u>Similar to a residential home</u>
<u>Household Models</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Freestanding household – an independently operating household that may be located in a residential neighborhood.</u> • <u>Colocated household – multiple freestanding households located in proximity to one another and sharing staffing, support, and administrative functions.</u> • <u>Interconnected household – multiple households physically connected, horizontally or vertically, in a single structure and sharing resident activity, staffing, support, and administrative functions.</u> 	<u>10 to 20 per household</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Decentralized services enable autonomous household functionality</u> • <u>Some staffing, support, and administrative functions may be shared between households</u> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Functional kitchen, dining and living spaces that are residential in scale, layout, and character</u> • <u>Clearly defined boundaries and "front doors" distinguish individual households from other households and care/living/ public areas</u>
<u>Cluster and/or Neighborhood Model</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Occupants per cluster varies</u> • <u>Number of clusters per neighborhood varies</u> 	<u>Services may be comprised of both centralized and decentralized strategies</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Multiple care/living areas (clusters) are comprised of dedicated group/ social/dining spaces for use by occupants residing in nearby designated bedrooms.</u> • <u>Clusters are often grouped together into neighborhoods.</u>

<u>Traditional (Institutional) Model</u>	<u>17 or more</u>	<u>Services are primarily centralized</u>	<u>Social and dining spaces are typically centralized</u>
<u>Apartment-Style Community Model</u>	<u>4 or more units (total occupancy varies)</u>	<u>Services are typically centralized</u>	<u>Units typically include a kitchen/kitchenette</u>

DRAFT

Table 1.2-54: Maximum Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems^{1,2}

Room Type	Octave Band	Sound Pressure Level
	NC ^{3,4}	dBA
Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas		
Resident room/dwelling unit	35	40
Multiple-occupant resident care area	45	50
Quiet room ⁵	30	35
Diagnostic and Treatment Areas		
Exam/treatment room	40	45
Telemedicine room	0	35
Support Areas		
Medication room	35	40
Medical or pharmacy waiting area ⁶	40	45
Office	40	45
Teleconferencing room	25	30
Public Areas		
Auditorium	30	35
Corridor (public corridor in resident care areas)	45	50
Conference room	35	40
Community meeting room	30	35
Communal dining room with open kitchen ⁷	45	50
Communal dining room with closed kitchen	40	45
Natatorium	45	50

¹Noise criteria for building systems noise can be applied to any size or type of space. Noise criteria are applied to the average level in the room, recognizing there is some variation to be expected. ANSI/ASA S12.2: *Criteria for Evaluation Room Noise* defines how noise criteria are determined.

²Additional spaces identified in the functional program that have similar characteristics to those listed in Table 1.2-5 shall use the similar space criteria as a baseline for maximum noise criteria.

³See *Sound & Vibration 2.0: Design Guidelines for Health Care Facilities* for a discussion of room noise rating criteria.

⁴Spaces shall be designed to fall below the values shown in this table with no rattles or tonal characteristics. For rooms using non-central recirculating HVAC single-room systems (i.e., PTAC units), HVAC units shall be selected based on the A-weighted sound level (dBA) including noise generated from the compressor cycling on and off.

⁵Also applies to private speech and hearing services rooms and private music therapy rooms.

⁶Refer to Section 1.2-5.5.5 (Privacy and Confidentiality) for HIPAA speech privacy information.

⁷~~Open~~ The acoustic quality of open kitchens ~~provide a different~~ can compromise the dining experience ~~but compromise acoustic quality~~; open kitchens benefit from employing a combination of strategic placement or confinement of equipment, noise diffusing architectural details and configurations, as well as sound-absorbing materials and finishes.

DRAFT

1.3 Site

1.3-1 General

1.3-1.1 Application

The provisions of this chapter shall apply to all residential care and support facilities.

1.3-1.2 See Section 1.2-2.2.3.2 (1) (Functional Requirements—Site) for functional requirements to consider when selecting the site for a residential care or support facility.

1.3-1.3 The location of the building shall be evaluated according to the impact of site exterior noise, acoustics, and the care population. See Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) for additional requirements.

1.3-2 Location

1.3-2.1 Access

The site of any residential care and support facility shall be accessible to the community and to service and emergency vehicles.

1.3-2.1.1 Access to emergency services shall be located to incur minimal damage from floods and other natural disasters. See Section 1.2-4.8 (Disaster, Emergency and Vulnerability Assessment) for additional requirements.

1.3-2.1.2 Fire department and emergency vehicle access shall be provided in accordance with local requirements.

1.3-2.2 Availability of Transportation

1.3-2.2.1 Site design shall integrate building and parking locations, adjacencies, and access points with on-site and off-site vehicular and pedestrian patterns and transportation services.

1.3-2.2.2 The site design shall be developed to support the project care model and operational requirements described in the functional program.

1.3-2.3 Security

See Section 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for security considerations to review during the site selection process.

1.3-2.3.1 Residential care and support facilities shall have security features for residents, families, staff, and the public that are consistent with the conditions and risks inherent in the location of the facility.

1.3-2.3.2 Primary access points to the facility shall be visible from outside.

1.3-2.4 Access to Utilities

1.3-2.4.1 General

Facilities shall have access to reliable utilities (water, gas, sewer, electricity) in compliance with local, state, and federal regulations for facility types.

1.3-2.4.2 Water Supply

The water supply shall have the capacity to provide for both normal usage and fire-fighting requirements.

1.3-2.4.3 Electricity

The electricity provided shall be of stable voltage and frequency.

1.3-3 Site Features

1.3-3.1 Roads

Access roads to entrances and service areas shall be provided on the property as applicable to the care population and facility/setting type.

1.3-3.2 Pedestrian Walkways

1.3-3.2.1 Accessible paved walkways [that meet accessibility standards](#) shall be provided for pedestrian traffic.

1.3-3.2.2 Aligned curb cuts shall be provided for continuity of access throughout the community or facility grounds.

1.3-3.3 Parking

The design of parking and exterior spaces shall minimize the opportunity for violent and property crime, promote efficient resource management, and provide a welcoming environment.

1.3-3.3.1 Parking needs shall be evaluated for each new facility, major addition, or major change in function and included in the functional program.

1.3-3.3.2 In the absence of local requirements, each residential care and support facility shall provide parking to satisfy the needs of residents, staff, and visitors.

1.3-3.3.3 Unless otherwise prohibited by facility chapters in Parts 3, 4, and 5 of the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*, reduction of parking requirements shall be permitted, as acceptable to local authorities having jurisdiction, based on whether the following characteristics apply to the facility or setting:

1.3-3.3.3.1 Located in an area convenient to pedestrians, public transportation, or public parking facilities

1.3-3.3.3.2 Accessible to alternative transportation arrangements such as carpooling or shuttle buses

1.3-3.4 Signage and Wayfinding

Wayfinding shall be provided to direct people unfamiliar with the facility to parking areas and entrances. See sections 1.2-5.5.3 (Environment of Care Requirements: Physical Environment Elements—Wayfinding) and 1.2-6.4 (Planning Considerations and Requirements—Signage) for additional requirements.

1.3-3.5 Site Lighting

Site lighting shall be provided on roads, parking lots, and pedestrian walkways. See Section 2.1-8.7 (Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems) for additional requirements.

1.3-3.6 Landscape Features

1.3-3.6.1 General

See sections 1.2-5.5.1 (Light) and 1.2-5.5.2 (Views of and Access to Nature) for additional requirements.

1.3-3.6.2 Outdoor Activity Areas

Gardens and outdoor activity areas shall be located to receive direct sunlight at some time during the day.

1.3-3.6.3 Outdoor Water Features

1.3-3.6.3.1 Where provided, open outdoor water features shall be designed to support maintenance of safe water quality to protect the public from infectious or irritating aerosols.

1.3-3.6.3.2 Where provided for facilities that serve special care populations, outdoor water features shall be designed with the care population in mind to provide safe and [inclusive](#) [accessible](#) environments.

1.3-4 Environmental Pollution Control

1.3-4.1 General

The design, construction, renovation, expansion, equipment, and operation of residential care and support facilities shall meet the provisions of applicable government environmental pollution control laws and associated agency regulations. See Section 1.2-6.3.9 (Emissions) for additional information.

1.3-4.2 Additional Criteria for Site Sustainability

See Section 1.2-6.3.3 (Site Selection and Development) for building orientation requirements.

1.4 Equipment

1.4-1 General

1.4-1.1 Application

This chapter shall apply to all residential care and support facility projects.

1.4-1.2 Equipment List

An equipment list shall be developed and maintained throughout the design development process and included in the project documents to assist in overall coordination of the acquisition, installation, and relocation of equipment.

1.4-1.2.1 The equipment list shall include all equipment necessary to operate the facility.

1.4-1.2.2 The equipment list shall include the classifications identified in Section 1.4-2 (Equipment Classification).

1.4-1.2.3 The equipment list shall specify whether the items are:

1.4-1.2.3.1 New owner/operator-furnished and owner/operator-installed

1.4-1.2.3.2 New owner/operator-furnished and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.3 New contractor-furnished and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.4 Existing salvaged, reconditioned, relocated, and owner-installed

1.4-1.2.3.5 Existing salvaged, reconditioned, relocated, and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.6 Existing salvaged, relocated, and owner/operator-installed

1.4-1.2.3.7 Existing salvaged, relocated, and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.8 Not-in-contract

1.4-1.3 Documentation Requirements

1.4-1.3.1 Provisions for Equipment

1.4-1.3.1.1 The drawings and other project documentation shall indicate provisions for the installation of fixed or movable equipment that requires dedicated building services or special structures and illustrate how the major equipment will function in the space.

1.4-1.3.1.2 An equipment utility location drawing shall be produced to locate all services for equipment that will require floor space and mechanical connections.

1.4-1.3.2 Not-in-Contract (NIC) Equipment

1.4-1.3.2.1 Design development documents. Equipment that is not included in the construction contract but requires mechanical or electrical service connections or construction modifications shall be identified

on the design development documents to facilitate coordination with the architectural, mechanical, and electrical phases of construction.

1.4-1.3.2.2 Construction documents. Such equipment shall be identified in the construction documents as owner/operator-provided or not-in-contract for purposes of coordination.

1.4-1.3.3 Final Equipment Selections

1.4-1.3.3.1 Adjustments shall be made to the construction documents to accommodate final selections for NIC equipment during shop drawing and submittal review.

1.4-1.3.3.2 When final selections are made, the construction documents shall be revised to show the equipment placed in service.

1.4-2 Equipment Classification

Equipment to be used in projects shall be classified as building service equipment, fixed equipment, or movable equipment.

1.4-3 Equipment Requirements

1.4-3.1 Major Technical Equipment

Coordination of the location ~~Location~~ and installation of major technical equipment ~~that affects the overall operation and occupancy of a residential health, care, or support facility~~ shall be documented to ~~facilitate coordination~~ between the owner/operator, building designer, ~~equipment~~ installer, construction contractors, and others members of the project team.

1.4-3.2 Electronic Equipment

1.4-3.2.1 Protection

Surge protection shall be provided to protect computerized equipment from power surges and spikes that might damage the equipment or software programs.

1.4-3.2.2 Constant Power

Uninterruptible power supply (battery backup or generator) shall be provided where loss of data input may compromise resident care.

1.4-4 Space Requirements for Equipment

1.4-4.1 Fixed and Building Service Equipment

Space for accessing and servicing fixed and building service equipment shall be provided.

1.4-4.2 Movable and Portable Equipment

1.4-4.2.1 The following shall be considered during facility planning and design:

1.4-4.2.1.1 Locations for movable and portable equipment requiring floor space and mechanical connections at point of use

1.4-4.2.1.2 Electrical connections needed where portable equipment is expected to be used

1.4-4.2.2 See Section 1.4-1.3 (Documentation Requirements) for drawing requirements.

DRAFT

2.1 Common Elements

2.1-1 General

2.1-1.1 Application

This chapter contains elements that are common to most types of residential care and support facilities.

2.1-1.1.1 The common elements in this chapter shall be required for a project when referenced from facility chapters in Part 3 (Residential Health Facilities), Part 4 (Residential Care and Support Facilities), and Part 5 (Nonresidential Support Facilities) listed in Section 2.1-1.1.2.

2.1-1.1.2 Specific requirements for types of residential facilities and settings are located in the following chapters:

2.1-1.1.2.1 Specific Requirements for Nursing Homes (Chapter 3.1)

2.1-1.1.2.2 Specific Requirements for Hospice Facilities (Chapter 3.2)

2.1-1.1.2.3 Specific Requirements for Assisted Living Settings (Chapter 4.1)

~~**2.1-1.1.2.4** Specific Requirements for Independent Living Settings (Chapter 4.2)~~

2.1-1.1.2.45 Specific Requirements for Long-Term Residential Substance Use Disorder Treatment Facilities (Chapter 4.3)

2.1-1.1.2.56 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities (Chapter 4.4)

[**2.1-1.1.2.6** Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities \(Chapter 4.5\)](#)

2.1-1.1.2.7 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities (Chapter 5.1)

2.1-1.1.2.8 Specific Requirements for Wellness Centers (Chapter 5.2)

2.1-1.1.2.9 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities (Chapter 5.3)

2.1-1.1.3 Cross-references in this chapter and in the facility chapters include the section as identified by number and heading and all its subsections, unless otherwise noted.

2.1-1.2 Functional Program

2.1-1.2.1 The requirements in Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program) shall apply.

2.1-1.2.2 Reserved

2.1-1.2.3 Shared Services

2.1-1.2.3.1 Each residential care or support facility shall, at minimum, provide the elements described in the applicable chapters of the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*. However, where a project calls for sharing or purchasing services, appropriate modifications to space and/or parking requirements shall be permitted.

2.1-1.2.3.2 Where a residential care or support facility is part of or contractually linked with another facility, sharing of services such as dietary, storage, pharmacy, linen, and laundry shall be permitted insofar as practical.

2.1-1.3 Site

~~See Section 1.3-3.3 (Parking) for requirements.~~

2.1-2 Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas

2.1-2.1 General

2.1-2.1.1 Application

The requirements for resident care/living areas (units), community areas, and associated support areas included in this section are common to most residential care and support facilities. For requirements specific to a facility type, see the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.

2.1-2.1.2 Design Criteria for Accommodations for Care of Specialized Populations

2.1-2.1.2.1 General. In facilities serving various care populations (e.g., individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions, behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, developmental disabilities ~~dementia, behavioral and mental health issues, cognitive and developmental disabilities~~), common areas shall be permitted to be shared provided the needs of all residents sharing the areas are met.

2.1-2.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and, behavioral and mental health issues, or cognitive and developmental disabilities

- (1) ~~Reserved General. The facility shall be designed to facilitate the highest level of functioning for all residents.~~
- (2) Physical environment elements for risk reduction. Where the care population will include individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and, behavioral and mental health issues, or cognitive and developmental disabilities, accommodations to be provided shall be determined by the resident dementia and behavioral and mental health risk assessment portion of the safety risk assessment (see Section 1.2-4.6).
 - (a) Safety and security systems shall be integrated and unobtrusive.
 - (i) General
 - Resident security shall be provided through systems that secure resident units designated for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions, including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, and cognitive and developmental disabilities.
 - See Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) for additional requirements.
 - (ii) The type of security system used, whether operationally and/or physically based, shall be determined by the safety risk assessment and the care model.

(iii) Code compliance

- Resident security provisions shall comply with life safety codes.
- If the safety risk assessment indicates the need to limit the movements of any residents for their safety, all door locking arrangements shall be in full compliance with applicable requirements of NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*.
- Private mode signaling of the fire alarm system shall be used in areas serving individuals with dementia.
- For units housing residents with a primary psychiatric diagnosis, fail-secure locking shall be provided in compliance with NFPA 101 and the *International Building Code*.

(iv) Areas to be secured shall be:

- Determined by the safety risk assessment.
- Based on the needs of the care population.
- Permitted to include bathing, soiled utility, service areas, storage, and staff work areas.

(v) Operable windows. Provision of operable windows shall be permitted.

- Operable windows shall be designed to minimize the risk of elopement and accidental falls.
- Operable windows shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows).
- Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, security glazing shall be used for behavioral and mental health units.

(b) Physical environment features and harm reduction-

(i) Physical environment features that reduce harm and reduce potential risks to the care population and staff shall be included in the safety risk assessment ~~considered~~.

(ii) Elevated platforms, balconies, and low openings or sills shall be designed to prevent residents from jumping from them.

(c) Resident stress-

(i) ~~Provision of r~~Relaxation spaces (e.g., quiet/calming rooms) ~~for agitated residents~~ shall be provided ~~considered~~ to reduce stress for residents. ~~See Section 2.1-2.2.5.3 (Quiet room) for information.~~

(ii) Relaxation areas shall be permitted to be shared with other functions (e.g., consultation room, private dining room).

(iii) Quiet/calming rooms shall be immediately accessible from resident living areas.

(3) Resident areas

(a) General. The following requirements shall apply to resident areas for individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions, including dementia and cognitive and

developmental disabilities. ~~For additional requirements, see the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.~~

- (b) Resident unit
 - (i) Reserved
 - (ii) Resident room. Resident rooms shall meet the requirements of facility chapters in Parts 3 and 4 except that cooking appliances shall not be required in resident rooms for individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions, including dementia and cognitive and developmental disabilities. See Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (2) (Physical environment elements for risk reduction) and appendix section A2.1-2.1.2.3 (3)(b)(ii) (Special design elements for resident rooms for individuals with dementia) for design considerations for dementia residents.
- (c) Resident living areas. The resident living environment shall be designed to ~~accommodate the provision of special features (e.g., personalized resident bedrooms, features that support resident orientation to the surroundings, secured storage, safe outdoor areas, security considerations) that support individuals with varying levels and types of neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions, including dementia and~~ of cognitive and developmental disabilities impairment.
 - (i) ~~Reserved~~ Living areas. Living areas shall be readily accessible and visible to residents.
 - (ii) Dining areas facilities. Dining areas shall be readily accessible and visible to residents.
- (d) Outdoor activity area. ~~(+) A secure outdoor activity area gardens and lounge areas shall be provided available for residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions, including dementia and living in a dementia, behavioral and mental health, or cognitive and developmental disabilities. disability health facility or setting. This space shall:~~
 - (i) Be visible and readily accessible to residents with minimal staff assistance.
 - (ii) Be designed with a minimum of 28 square feet (2.60 square meters) of space per resident served.
 - (iii) ~~Be secured by a fence or walls. Plant materials used in outdoor activity areas shall be nontoxic and not poisonous to humans.~~
 - (iv) Have an area protected from direct sunshine and rain throughout the day.
 - (v) Have walking surfaces that are firm, slip-resistant, and suitable for individuals using wheelchairs and walkers.
 - (vi) Have seating provided at a maximum of 50-foot (15.24-meter) intervals.
 - (vii) Have plant materials that are nontoxic and not poisonous to humans.

2.1-2.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others

- (1) General. ~~The facility shall be designed to facilitate the highest level of functioning for all residents.~~
 - (a) Where a facility serves any combination of pediatric, adolescent, or adult populations, there shall be separation between the areas that serve them.

(b) Where a facility serves residents who exhibit behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, male and female residents shall have a separation between areas that serve them.

(2) Physical environment elements for risk reduction. Where the care population will include individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self ~~dementia, behavioral and mental health issues,~~ or others, cognitive and developmental disabilities accommodations to be provided shall be determined by the resident dementia and behavioral and mental health risk assessment portion of the safety risk assessment (see Section 1.2-4.6).

(a) Safety and security systems shall be integrated and unobtrusive.

(b) Building systems within reach of residents shall meet the ~~mural does not impair the operation~~ requirements in Section 1.2-5.3 (Environment of Care Requirements—Systems Design).

(c) In resident-occupied areas, wardrobes, closets, or cupboards shall be fixed and lockable.

~~J(d) Locating exit doors outside of direct resident line of sight may also~~ The primary entrance shall be effective ~~secured with locked doors.~~

(i) General

- Resident security shall be provided through systems that secure resident units designated for care of individuals with ~~dementia, behavioral and mental health issues,~~ and ~~cognitive and developmental disabilities.~~
- The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

(ii) The type of security system used, whether operationally and/or physically based, shall be determined by the safety risk assessment and the care model.

(iii) Code compliance

- ~~Resident security provisions shall comply with life safety codes.~~
- If the safety risk assessment indicates the need to limit the movements of any residents for their safety, all door locking arrangements and other resident security provisions shall be in full compliance with applicable requirements of NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*.
- For units housing residents with a primary psychiatric diagnosis, fail-secure locking shall be provided in compliance with NFPA 101 and the *International Building Code*.

(iv) Areas to be secured shall be:

- Determined by the safety risk assessment.
- Based on the needs of the care population.
- Permitted to include bathing, soiled utility, service areas, storage, and staff work areas.

(v) Operable windows. Provision of operable windows shall be permitted.

- Operable windows shall be designed to minimize the risk of elopement and accidental falls.

- Operable windows shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows).
 - Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, security glazing shall be used for behavioral and mental health units.
- (e**b**) Physical environment features and harm reduction. Physical environment features that reduce harm and reduce potential risks to the care population and staff shall ~~be considered~~ include the following:-
- ~~b.(i)~~ Elevated platforms, balconies, and low openings or sills; shall be designed to prevent residents from ~~which residents could jump-jumping from them, should be avoided.~~
 - ~~e.(ii)~~ Storage for equipment, carts, and supplies shall be secured and lockable.
 - ~~(iii) —Technology that allows~~ Video surveillance shall be permitted to allow observation of areas not directly visible to staff.
- (f**e**) Resident stress-
- (i) Provision of relaxation spaces (e.g., quiet/calming rooms) for agitated residents shall be considered to reduce stress for residents. See Section 2.1-2.2.5.3 (Quiet/calming room) for information.
 - (ii) Areas that allow for relaxation and control of the social environment (e.g., secure outdoor areas, calming rooms) shall be provided to reduce stress.
- (3) Resident areas
- (a) ~~Reserved General. For additional requirements, see the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.~~
 - (b) Resident unit
 - (i) Reserved
 - (ii) Resident room. See Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (2) (Physical environment elements for risk reduction) ~~and appendix section A2.1-2.1.2.3 (3)(b)(ii) (Special design elements for resident rooms for individuals with dementia)~~ for design considerations for dementia residents.
 - (c) Resident living areas. The resident living environment shall be designed to accommodate the provision of special features (e.g., personalized resident bedrooms, features that support resident orientation to the surroundings, secured storage, safe outdoor areas, security considerations) that support individuals with varying levels of cognitive impairment.
 - (d) ~~A2.1-2.1.2.3 (3)(c) Family area.~~ Resident support areas
 - (i) Family area. An area that offers privacy for residents and visiting family ~~shall~~ should be provided. This area shall be permitted to be shared with other functions (e.g., consultation room, private dining room).
 - ~~(i) Reserved~~
 - (ii) Dining areas ~~facilities~~

(e) Outdoor activity area

(i) Secure outdoor gardens and lounge areas shall be readily accessible ~~available~~ for residents ~~living in~~ with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. ~~a dementia, behavioral and mental health, or cognitive and developmental disability health facility or setting.~~

(ii) Plant materials used in outdoor activity areas shall be nontoxic and not poisonous to humans.

(iii) Fences, walls, and outdoor railings. Where fences, walls, and outdoor railings form a secure outdoor space and serve a locked patient care unit, they shall:

- Be designed to hinder climbing.
- Be installed with tamper-resistant hardware.
- Be anchored to withstand the body force of a 350-pound (158.76-kilogram) person.

(iv) Gates or doors. Where provided, gates or doors in the fence or wall shall:

- Swing out of the outdoor area.
- Have the hinge installed on the outside of the outdoor area.
- Be provided with a locking mechanism that has been coordinated with life safety exiting requirements.

(v) Where it is physically impractical to provide an outdoor area readily accessible to individual resident living areas, the facility shall provide residents with access to a secure outdoor area (e.g., on a different floor or shared by multiple living areas on the same floor) and designate the following for the AHJ on the plan submission:

- The location of the secure outdoor space to be used by residents
- The means by which the resident accesses the secure outdoor space
- The means by which staff will visually survey the secure outdoor space

2.1-2.1.2.4 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care

(1) General

(a) Location. The care area shall be designed and located to control unrelated traffic through the unit or setting.

(b) Palliative care design. Where palliative care will be provided, the requirements in this section and the following sections shall be met:

(i) Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment)

(ii) Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security)

(iii) Where the palliative care population will include residents with cognitive impairment, see Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia ~~and, behavioral and mental health issues, or~~ cognitive and developmental disabilities) for additional requirements.

(2) Restorative break areas. The resident environment shall include restorative break area(s).

2.1-2.2 Resident Unit or Resident Living Area

2.1-2.2.1 General

2.1-2.2.1.1 Accommodations for mobility or transfer equipment. Space shall be provided for resident care and for maneuvering in and around areas where staff will use resident mobility or transfer equipment.

2.1-2.2.1.2 Accommodations to encourage resident mobility. Resident units shall be designed to encourage ambulation in resident areas, including flooring transitions between resident rooms and corridors.

2.1-2.2.1.3 Doors in resident units

- (1) Door openings shall be sized to allow passage of resident-operated mobility devices, resident mobility and transfer equipment, and accompanying staff.
- (2) Identified destination points (e.g., resident rooms, bathrooms, community spaces) shall be evaluated for ease of door operation to assure that passage in either direction is not hindered due to door weight or closure pressure.

2.1-2.2.1.4 Resident telephone access. Provisions shall be made in or near each resident unit to allow residents to make and receive telephone calls in private.

2.1-2.2.2 Resident Room

2.1-2.2.2.1 Resident rooms shall be sized, arranged, and furnished to provide maximize safe resident and caregiver safety during mobility, mobilization, weight-bearing activities, and ambulation potential while minimizing risk to caregivers. ~~See the facility chapters in Parts 3 and 4 for additional resident room requirements.~~

2.1-2.2.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Reserved

(2) Clearances ~~Resident chair clearance zones~~

(a) Bed

(i) 36 inches (91.44 centimeters) between the side of the bed and any wall or other fixed obstruction

(ii) In single resident rooms, 36 inches (91.44 centimeters) between the foot of the bed and any wall or other fixed obstruction

(iii) In multiple resident rooms, 48 inches (1.22 meters) between the foot of the bed and any wall or other fixed obstruction

(b) Resident chair. Unimpeded clearances shall be provided at the front and at least one side of the resident chair. These clearances shall be equal to or greater than those required around the sides and foot of the resident bed.

(3) Clear circulation pathway. A clear circulation pathway of 36 inches (91.44 centimeters) between fixed elements or equipment in the resident room shall be provided. This circulation pathway shall be permitted to overlap other required clearances.

2.1-2.2.3 —2.1-2.2.4 Reserved

2.1-2.2.4~~2.1.2.2~~ Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

During project planning, organizations shall determine their need to provide spaces designed to enable safe care of individuals of size as required in Section 1.2-6.5 (Planning Considerations for Accommodation of Individuals of Size). ~~Where it has been determined that a facility will accommodate residents who are individuals of size, areas of the facility designated to accommodate these residents and the associated path of egress to arrive at these areas shall be designed to address weight support and clearances identified during the planning phase.~~

2.1-2.2.4.1 General

(1) Application

(a) Resident care areas designated for care of individuals of size shall meet the requirements in this section.

(b) A resident mobility and transfer risk assessment (Section 1.2-4.3) shall determine the need for expanded-capacity lifts and architectural details that support mobility of individuals of size in spaces where these patients may receive care.

(2) Location. Spaces designated for care of or use by individuals of size shall be provided to accommodate the population expected to be served by the facility.

(3) Resident lift system

(a) Accommodations for resident handling and mobilization shall be provided by either an overhead lift system or a floor-based full-body sling lift and standing-assist lifts.

(b) Lifts chosen shall be capable of accommodating the threshold weight capacity of individuals of size identified in the planning phase. See Section 1.2-4.3 (Resident Mobility and Transfer Risk Assessment).

2.1-2.2.4.2 Resident room for individuals of size. The following shall apply to resident rooms designated for individuals of size.

(1) Reserved

(2) Space requirements

(a) Area

(i) Resident rooms for individuals of size with a fixed overhead lift shall have the following:

- Minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet (18.58 square meters) per resident
- Minimum clear dimension of 13 feet 2 inches (4.01 meters) for the clear floor area

(ii) Resident rooms for individuals of size without overhead lifts shall have the following:

- Minimum clear floor area of 219 square feet (20.35 square meters) per resident

- Minimum clear dimension of 13 feet 2 inches (4.01 meters) for the clear floor area
- (b) Clearances. The following clearances shall be provided by the room dimensions and arrangements:
- (i) At the foot of the bed: 5 feet (1.52 meters)
 - (ii) On the non-transfer side of the bed: 5 feet 6 inches (1.68 meters) from the edge of the bed
 - (iii) On the transfer side of the bed: A rectangular clear floor area parallel to the bed shall have these dimensions:
 - In rooms with ceiling-mounted lifts:
 - 10 feet 6 inches (3.20 meters) long, measured beginning 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) from the headwall.
 - 5 feet 6 inches (1.68 meters) wide, measured from the edge of the expanded-capacity bed
 - In rooms without ceiling- or wall-mounted lifts where mobile lifts will be used:
 - 10 feet 6 inches (3.20 meters) long, measured beginning 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) from the headwall.
 - 7 feet (2.13 meters), measured from the edge of the expanded-capacity patient bed.
 - (iv) A clear circulation pathway of 60 inches (1.52 meters) shall be provided between fixed elements or equipment. This circulation pathway shall be permitted to overlap with other required clearances.

2.1-2.2.4.3 Handwashing station for use by individuals of size

- (1) Handwashing stations in toilet rooms designated for use by individuals of size shall meet the requirements of this section and Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing Stations).
- (2) The downward static force required for handwashing stations designated for individuals of size shall be identified during the planning phase and shall accommodate the maximum patient weight of the patient population.

2.1-2.2.4.3 Resident toilet room for individuals of size

- (1) Toilet rooms designated for use by individuals of size shall meet the facility requirements in Parts 3 through 5 as amended in this section.
- (2) Space requirements
 - (a) Where an expanded-capacity toilet is used, it shall be mounted a minimum of 36 inches (91.44 centimeters) from the finished wall to the centerline of the toilet on both sides.
 - (b) Where a regular toilet is used, the toilet shall be mounted a minimum of 44 inches (1.12 meters) from the finished wall to the centerline of the toilet on both sides to allow for positioning of an expanded-capacity commode over the toilet when the weight capacity of the existing toilet will not accommodate the patient weight.
 - (c) A 46-inch-wide (1.17-meter wide) clear floor area shall extend 72 inches (1.83 meters) from the front of the toilet.

(3) Grab bars. The requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.9 (Grab bars) shall apply. Grab bars shall be designed to accommodate the maximum patient weight established in the planning phase.

2.1-2.2.4.4 Resident bathing facilities for use by individuals of size

(1) Bathing facilities designated for use by individuals of size shall meet the facility requirements in Parts 3 through 5 as amended in this section.

(2) Shower stalls shall be a minimum of 4 feet by 6 feet (1.22 meters by 1.83 meters).

(3) Shower stalls shall be equipped with grab bars that are capable of supporting 800 pounds (362.88 kilograms).

(4) Shower stalls shall be equipped with handheld spray nozzles.

2.1-2.2.4.5 Equipment and supply storage for care of individuals of size. When sizing equipment storage for areas where care will be provided for individuals of size, space shall be provided to accommodate the size of the expanded-capacity equipment (e.g., floor-based lifts, lift slings, and accessories) and supplies that will be used.

2.1-2.2.4.6 Waiting area seating for individuals of size

(1) Waiting areas shall be sized to accommodate the expanded-capacity furniture required for patients and visitors of size.

(2) A minimum of 5 percent of the seating shall be able to accommodate a person who weighs 600 pounds (272.16 kilograms).

2.1-2.2.4.7 Special design elements for spaces for care of individuals of size

(1) All plumbing fixtures, handrails, grab bars, patient lift equipment, built-in furniture, and other furnishings and equipment shall be designed to accommodate the maximum patient weight established in the planning phase.

(2) Door openings to accommodate individuals of size. Door openings shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (2) (Architectural Details—Door openings) as amended in this section.

(a) All door openings used for the path of travel to public areas and areas where care will be provided for individuals of size shall have a minimum clear width of 44.5 inches (1.13 meters).

(b) Door openings to resident rooms for individuals of size shall have a minimum clear width of 57 inches (1.45 meters).

(c) Door openings to toilet rooms designated for individuals of size shall have a minimum clear width of 44.5 inches (1.13 meters).

2.1-2.2.5 Special Care Resident Rooms

2.1-2.2.5.1 Airborne infection isolation (AII) room

(1) General

- (a) The need for and number of AII rooms shall be determined by an infection control risk assessment. See Section 1.2-4.2 (Infection Control Risk Assessment).
 - (b) Where provided, each AII room shall comply with the requirements of this section and Section 3.1-2.2.2 (Resident Room Requirements for New Construction).
- (2) Capacity. Each AII room shall contain only one bed.
- (3) The toilet room provided for each AII room shall include a shower.
- (4) Anteroom. An anteroom is not required; however, where an anteroom is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:
- (a) The anteroom shall provide space for persons to don personal protective equipment before entering the AII room.
 - (b) All doors to the anteroom shall have self-closing devices or an audible alarm arrangement that can be activated when the AII room is in use as an isolation room.
- (5) Where no anteroom is provided, provision shall be made for storage of personal protective equipment at the entrance to the AII room.
- (6) Special design elements
- (a) Architectural details
 - (i) AII room perimeter walls, ceiling, and floor, including penetrations, shall be constructed to prevent air exfiltration.
 - (ii) AII rooms shall have self-closing devices on all room exit doors.
 - (b) Window treatments and privacy curtains
 - (i) Window treatments and privacy curtains shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.4.4 (Window treatments and privacy curtains).
 - (ii) Fabric drapes and privacy curtains shall not be permitted in the AII room.
 - (c) Ventilation
 - (i) Ventilation following loss of electrical power. The space ventilation and pressure relationship requirements of Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) shall be maintained for AII rooms, even in the event of loss of normal electrical power.
 - (ii) Use of recirculating room units shall not be permitted in new construction.
 - (iii) Use of recirculating devices with HEPA filters shall be permitted in existing facilities as interim, supplemental environmental controls to meet requirements for the control of airborne infectious agents. The design of such recirculating systems shall allow for easy access for scheduled preventive maintenance and cleaning.

- (iv) See Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for relative humidity requirements.

2.1-2.2.5.2 Reserved

2.1-2.2.5.3 Resident rooms accommodating peritoneal dialysis. The following requirements shall apply to resident rooms where residents self-perform or receive peritoneal dialysis.

- (1) Capacity. Peritoneal dialysis shall be performed in single-resident rooms only.
- (2) Electrical. A GFCI receptacle shall be provided adjacent to the resident bed for the cyclor used in peritoneal dialysis. This receptacle shall be permitted to be on a 15 amp circuit.
- (3) Plumbing. A handwashing station shall be provided. The toilet room handwashing station shall be permitted to serve this function.

2.1-2.2.5.4~~3~~ Quiet room. Where a quiet room is provided, the following requirements shall be met:

- (1) Capacity. Each quiet room shall be designed to accommodate one resident and one caregiver.
- (2) Space requirements
- (a) Based on the care population, the quiet room shall be sized to accommodate:
- (i) One bed or recliner
 - (ii) One side chair
 - (iii) Multisensory equipment
- (b) Where the care population will include residents with dementia or other cognitive issues, see Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and-cognitive and developmental disabilities) for additional requirements.
- (3) Toilet room. A toilet room shall be provided adjacent to the quiet room.
- (a) The toilet room shall contain the following:
- (i) Toilet
 - (ii) Handwashing station. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.
- (b) The toilet room shall be permitted to be shared by residents using other activity areas.
- (4) Acoustic requirements. See the following:
- (a) Section 1.2-6.1.3 (Design Criteria for Acoustic Finishes)
 - (b) Section 1.2-6.1.4 (Design Criteria for Room Noise Levels)
 - (c) Section 1.2-6.1.5 (Design Criteria for Performance of Interior Wall and Floor/Ceiling Constructions)
 - (d) Section 1.2-6.1.6 (Design Guidelines for Speech Privacy)

2.1-2.2.6 Resident Toilet Room

Each resident room shall be directly accessible to a toilet room.

2.1-2.2.6.1 One toilet room shall serve no more than two residents in a resident room.

2.1-2.2.6.2 The toilet room shall contain the following:

(1) Toilet

(2) Handwashing station. The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall apply.

(3) Individual storage for the personal effects of each resident

2.1-2.2.6.3 Clearance shall be provided to enable physical access and maneuvering by staff members assisting the resident with mobility-device-to-toilet transfers and returns.

2.1-2.2.6.4 Door and door hardware shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (Doors and door hardware).

2.1-2.2.6.5 Grab bars

(1) Grab bars shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.9 (Grab bars).

(2) Where residents are capable of independent transfers, alternative grab bar configurations shall be permitted.

2.1-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

2.1-2.3.1 General

2.1-2.3.1.1 For new construction and renovation, community areas shall be designed and furnished to encourage resident, patient, and participant use.

2.1-2.3.1.2 The space needed for dining, recreation, and activities shall be determined by the following considerations:

- (1) The extent to which users need adaptive equipment and mobility aids and assistance from support and service staff
- (2) The extent to which support programs will be centralized or decentralized
- (3) The number of residents or participants to be seated for dining at one time

2.1-2.3.2 Dining Areas ~~Facilities~~

2.1-2.3.2.1 General

(1) Dining area design and location. The design and location of dining areas ~~facilities~~ shall encourage resident, participant, and visitor use.

(2) Planned use of dining areas ~~facilities~~ for other activities shall be permitted with the exception of diagnostic and treatment rooms or areas. See Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas) for

information. ~~See appendix section A1.2-6.1.3 (Design criteria for acoustic finishes) for acoustic considerations for dining facilities.~~

(3) Toilet room. Toilet facilities that accommodate residents or participants using resident-operated mobility devices shall be adjacent to dining areas.

(4) Access to nature. Natural light shall be provided in resident dining areas ~~in new construction.~~

2.1-2.3.2.2 Space requirements Central dining facility. Where a ~~central~~ dining facility is provided, areas ~~it~~ shall be sized to accommodate the following:

~~(1) Space for~~ Seating in dining areas shall accommodate 100 percent of the bed capacity at one time for new construction. The approval of smaller dining areas shall be at the discretion of the AHJ in accordance with the needs of the care population decreased occupant loads afforded by extended mealtimes, partial attendance, and multiple seatings.

~~(2) Space for residents and participants to access and leave their tables without disturbing othersb.~~ The dining ~~facilities should~~ areas shall be sized at a minimum of 28 square feet (2.6 square meters) for each resident or participant at one seating and a minimum width of 14 feet (4.27 meters) for new construction. ~~Adult day care programs~~ Some dining areas may require additional participant space based on the care population characteristics, furnishings, service equipment, and storage for mobility devices being served.

(3) Space provided for resident and participant dining shall allow residents, including those using wheelchairs and resident-operated mobility devices, to access and leave their tables without disturbing others.

(4) Where servers and food carts are used, clear and unobstructed circulation paths shall be provided.

~~(5) Clear and unobstructed circulation paths for servers and food carts~~

~~(5) Space for caregivers to assist residents and participants who require assistance with eating shall be provided.~~

2.1-2.3.2.3 Dining area types. Dining areas shall meet the requirements of the corresponding dining area type.

(1) Private dining room. Provision of separate satellite dining rooms immediately accessible to dining areas shall be permitted to accommodate less densely populated groups of residents and to make dining areas easily accessed by residents. Private dining rooms shall be permitted to share other functions.

(2) Outdoor dining. Dining outdoors shall be permitted in accordance with federal, state, and local building and health codes.

(3) In-room dining. Space shall be provided in the resident room to accommodate in-room dining, where required by the care model.

(4) Kitchen-associated dining area types

(a) Central dining. Central dining areas shall be located in close enough proximity to commercial kitchens to maintain food serving temperatures. The requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.1.2 (Commercial Kitchen) shall apply.

~~2.1-2.3.2.3 Decentralized dining facilities~~

(b) Decentralized dining. Separate or satellite dining areas facilities for small groups of residents or participants shall be permitted to be located:

- ~~(i)~~ Immediately accessible to resident units
- ~~(ii)~~ Immediately accessible to the retail kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.3 (Retail Kitchen).
- ~~(iii)~~ As part of activity areas for different adult day care populations
- ~~(iv)~~ Adjacent to a wellness center area (e.g., a juice bar near a fitness center)
- ~~(v)~~ In outdoor activity areas. See Section 1.3-3.6.2 (Site: Landscape Features—Outdoor Activity Areas).

(c) Kitchen-associated dining areas for residents or participants shall be permitted as follows:

- (i) Retail dining. Retail dining shall not be required to accommodate 100 percent of the bed capacity at one time. The number of occupants shall be determined by the intended retail service as defined in the functional program. The requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.1.3 (Retail Kitchen) shall apply.
- (ii) Household dining. To make dining areas easily accessible to residents and to accommodate less densely populated groups of residents, dining areas shall be adjacent to living areas and immediately accessible from household kitchens. The requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.1.4 (Household kitchen) shall apply.
- (iii) Social activity dining. The social activity dining area shall not be required to accommodate 100 percent of the bed capacity at one time. The number of occupants shall be determined by the functional program. The social activity dining area shall be readily accessible to other social activity areas and kitchen. The requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.1.5 (Social activity kitchen) shall apply.
- (iv) Outpatient therapy dining
 - The outpatient therapy dining area shall not be required to accommodate 100 percent of the bed capacity at one time. The number of occupants shall be determined by the functional program.
 - The outpatient therapy dining area shall not be subject to the same accessibility requirements as other dining areas.
 - The outpatient therapy dining area shall be designed to support occupational and physical therapy dining activities as an extension of outpatient therapy kitchen activities. The requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.1.6 (Outpatient therapy kitchen) shall apply.
 - The outpatient therapy dining area shall be located immediately accessible to occupational and physical therapy kitchen areas.
- (v) Warming/serving dining. The warming/serving dining area shall be directly accessible to warming/serving kitchen. The requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.1.7 (Warming/Serving Kitchen) shall apply.

2.1-2.3.2.4 Call station. Call station use in the dining area shall be evaluated and documented in the safety risk assessment.

2.1-2.3.3 ~~Reserved~~ Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas

Where recreation, lounge, and activity areas are provided, they shall provide the following:

2.1-2.3.3.1 Space to support resident activities and associated equipment identified during the planning phase

2.1-2.3.3.2 Areas sufficient in number and size to:

- (1) Allow resident groups of various sizes to gather
- (2) Accommodate separate and distinct activities

2.1-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

2.1-2.3.4.1 The facility or setting shall provide access to outdoor activity areas consistent with the geographic location and designed to promote and encourage residents to spend time in a safe outdoor setting.

- (1) Visual observation of outdoor activity areas from indoors shall be provided for staff and residents.
- (2) Visual observation by staff using video equipment shall be permitted.

2.1-2.3.4.2 Additional requirements shall apply for facilities with residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions or behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others in sections 2.1-2.1.2.2 (3)(d) (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and cognitive and developmental disabilities—Outdoor activity area) and 2.1-2.1.2.3 (3)(e) (Design criteria for accommodations for care if individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others—Outdoor activity area).

2.1-2.3.5 – 2.1-2.3.7 Reserved

2.1-2.3.8 Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

- (1) Handwashing station. Handwashing stations that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be provided directly or immediately accessible to dining areas.
- (2) Toilet room. Toilet facilities that accommodate residents or participants using resident-operated mobility devices shall be readily accessible to all dining, recreation, lounge, and activity areas.

2.1-2.4 – 2.1-2.7 Reserved

2.1-2.8 Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas

2.1-2.8.1 Application

2.1-2.8.1.1 Functional requirements

- (1) Identifiable spaces shall be provided for each operational function; however, use of a space for multiple purposes shall be permitted as long as the space complies with the requirements for each purpose served.

- (2) Except where the word “room” or “office” is used, accommodation of support functions in a multipurpose area shall be permitted.

2.1-2.8.1.2 Size. The size of each support area shall depend on the number and types of residents, patients, or participants served.

2.1-2.8.1.3 Location

- (1) Support areas for resident care shall be located in or readily accessible to each resident or patient unit.
- (2) Arrangement and location of support areas to serve more than one resident or patient unit shall be permitted, but at least one such support area shall be located on each resident or patient floor.

2.1-2.8.2 Staff Work Area

Resident care/living areas (units), hospice patient areas, participant activity areas, and outpatient rehabilitation areas shall have staff work areas in direct care locations.

2.1-2.8.3 Reserved

2.1-2.8.4 Consultation Room

2.1-2.8.4.1 Where provided, the consultation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

2.1-2.8.4.2 Space for care of individuals of size

- (1) Where the care population includes individuals of size, the consultation room shall be sized based on equipment, furnishing, and maneuvering space requirements.
- (2) Circulation from entry to exit of the room shall be evaluated for care of and use by individuals of size.

2.1-2.8.5 Reserved

2.1-2.8.6 Shared Toilet Room

2.1-2.8.6.1 Location and quantity of shared toilet rooms shall be determined and documented in the functional program and may be designated for use by user type (e.g., resident, staff, public).

2.1-2.8.6.2 Where residents and participants have access to a shared toilet room, the following requirements shall apply:

(1) The shared toilet room shall contain the following:

(a) Toilet

(b) Handwashing station meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

(c) A shelf and/or cabinet for general toilet room supplies

(2) Clearance shall be provided to enable physical access and maneuvering by staff members assisting the resident with mobility-device-to-toilet transfers and returns.

(3) Grab bars

(a) Grab bars shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.9 (Grab bars).

(b) Where residents are capable of independent transfers, alternative grab bar configurations shall be permitted.

(4) Toilet room doors

(a) Door and door hardware shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (Doors and door hardware).

(b) In shared resident bathrooms, use of privacy locks with emergency access release shall be permitted.

(c) Swinging doors shall open outward.

—2.1-2.8.7 Reserved

2.1-2.8.8 Medication Distribution and Storage Locations

2.1-2.8.8.1 General

~~(1) Provisions shall be made to support 24-hour distribution of medications.~~

~~(2)~~ Medications shall be permitted to be prepared, dispensed, and administered in the following locations, as identified in the medication safety portion of the safety risk assessment in Section 1.2-4.5 (Medication Safety Assessment):

~~(a)~~ Medication rooms

~~(b)~~ A medication distribution unit or cart

~~(c)~~ Medication cabinets in resident rooms

2.1-2.8.8.2 Medication rooms. Where medication rooms will be provided to fulfill the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.8.1 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations—General), one medication room shall be located on each resident care/living area (unit).

(1) The medication room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 50 square feet (4.65 square meters).

(2) Each medication room shall include the following:

(a) A work counter sized to accommodate functions for the facility type and care population served

(b) Handwashing station. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.

(c) Refrigerator for storage

(d) Double-locked storage for controlled drugs

(e) Where a sharps container is provided, it shall be placed in accordance with the OSHA Bloodborne Pathogen standard at 29 CFR 1910.1030(d)(4)(iii)(A)(2)(i).

(f) Task-specific lighting levels as recommended in USP-NF <Chapter 1066>

(g) Medication room sound levels that meet the requirements in the following:

- (i) Table 1.2-4 (Minimum Design Room Sound Absorption Coefficients)
- (ii) Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems)
- (iii) Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms)
- (iv) Nurse call or audible announcement shall be provided as indicated by a safety risk assessment.

2.1-2.8.8.3 A medication distribution unit or cart. Where a medication distribution unit or cart will be provided to fulfill the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.8.1 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations—General), it shall meet the following requirements:

- (1) Location of such units shall be permitted at the staff work area, in the clean workroom described in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room), in an alcove, or in a resident room as determined by the safety risk assessment.
- (2) Medication units located in resident rooms shall be secured.

2.1-2.8.8.4 Medication cabinets in resident rooms. Where medication cabinets in resident rooms will be provided to fulfill the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.8.1, the following requirements shall be met:

- (1) Medication storage located in resident rooms shall be secured.
- (2) Decentralized medication cabinets in resident rooms shall include task-specific lighting.

2.1-2.8.9 Central Bathing Room

2.1-2.8.9.1 General. The central bathing room shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Accessible showers) and 3.1-2.2.2.7 (Resident bathroom).

2.1-2.8.9.2 Access ~~A~~ccessibility

- (1) The bathtub or spa tub in this room shall be accessible to residents, hospice patients, or participants in wheelchairs.
- (2) The shower shall have fittings accessible to a resident, hospice patient, or participant in a recumbent position.
- (3) ~~Adult~~ Resident, hospice patient, or participant shower rooms shall be designed to allow entry of portable/mobile mechanical lifts, shower gurney devices, and shower chairs.

2.1-2.8.9.3 Toilet facilities

- (1) A toilet and handwashing station shall be provided in or directly accessible to each bathing room.
- (2) The toilet room shall be enclosed if the room is designed to be used by more than one resident, hospice patient, or participant at a time.

2.1-2.8.9.4 Grooming facilities. Access to a grooming location without reentry to the general corridor shall be provided. This shall contain the following:

- (1) Handwashing station. The handwashing station in Section 2.1-2.8.9.3 (Toilet facilities) shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

(2) Mirror

(3) Counter or shelf

~~2.1-2.8.10 Personal Services (Hair Salon/Spa) Areas~~

~~See the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for requirements.~~

~~2.1-2.8.11 Reserved Personal Laundry Facilities~~

~~Where decentralized personal laundry facilities are provided for washing and drying personal resident, patient, or participant laundry, the following requirements shall be met:~~

~~2.1-2.8.11.1 Separate laundry facilities shall be provided for small groups of residents or participants.~~

~~2.1-2.8.11.2 A washer and dryer shall be provided.~~

~~2.1-2.8.11.3 A work counter for sorting and folding shall be provided.~~

~~2.1-2.8.11.4 A handwashing station shall be directly or immediately accessible to the laundry room. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.~~

~~2.1-2.8.11.5 Where laundry will be collected and transported off site for processing, it shall be held in the soiled holding room in Section 2.1-3.8.12.3 (Soiled holding room).~~

2.1-2.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.1-2.9.1 Staff Lounge Area

2.1-2.9.1.1 A staff lounge area that supports breaks and respite for caregivers and administrative staff shall be provided.

2.1-2.9.1.2 The staff lounge area shall be permitted to be shared by more than one resident, patient, or participant care area.

2.1-2.9.1.3 The staff lounge area shall provide access to the following:

(1) Refrigerator

(2) Sink

(3) Space for microwave and other appliances

2.1-2.9.1.4 Space for vending machines shall be provided based on facility and staff needs.

2.1-2.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

2.1-2.9.2.1 Toilet room(s) for staff shall contain a toilet with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

2.1-2.9.2.2 Staff toilet rooms shall be permitted to be gender-inclusive.

2.1-2.9.3 Storage for Staff

Lockable storage shall be provided for staff members' personal effects.

2.1-2.9.4 Staff Shower

2.1-2.9.4.1 A shower and area to change clothes shall be provided for staff use.

2.1-2.9.4.2 A shared resident bathing area shall be permitted to be used for this purpose.

2.1-2.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors**2.1-2.10.1 Family Room**

Where a family room is included in a project, see facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for requirements.

2.1-2.10.2 Overnight Guest Accommodations

Where sleeping accommodations for visitors are provided, the following requirements shall apply:

- (1) Where a sleeping accommodation (e.g., recliner, sleep chair, sleep sofa) is located in the resident room, space shall be provided for circulation when the furnishing is fully open for use so staff can access the resident in case of an emergency.
- (2) Storage space shall be provided to accommodate and secure overnight guests' belongings.

2.1-2.10.3 Pet Accommodations

If pets are permitted in a facility, accommodations (e.g., sleeping areas, feeding areas, waste areas, storage for food and pet care supplies) shall be designated for them.

2.1-2.10.4 Visitation

Accommodations shall be made for safe visitation.

2.1-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas**2.1-3.1 General****2.1-3.1.1 Application**

The clinical and support areas described in this section are common to residential care and support facilities. For requirements specific to a facility type, see the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.

2.1-3.1.2 Community Access

Where the care population identified in the functional program includes patients from the community-at-large, a dedicated entry to the clinical services area shall be provided for community access.

2.1-3.2 Exam/Treatment Room**2.1-3.2.1 General**

2.1-3.2.1.1 An evaluation of specific exams and treatments to be provided in a facility shall be completed to determine if additional space beyond that specified in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam/Treatment Room—Space Requirements) is required to accommodate the following:

- (1) Needs of the care population
- (2) Specialty equipment used
- (3) Transfers or other resident movement required in the room

2.1-3.2.1.2 The type of exam table, bed, recliner, or chair to be used shall be based on an evaluation of operational requirements and an assessment of the cognitive ability of the care population being served.

2.1-3.2.1.3 See sections 1.2-2.2.1 (Owner's Project Requirements), [2.1-2.1.2.2 \(Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, and cognitive and developmental disabilities\)](#), and [2.1-2.1.2.3 \(Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others\)](#) (~~Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with dementia, behavioral and mental health issues, or cognitive and developmental disabilities~~) for additional requirements and recommendations.

2.1-3.2.2 Space Requirements

2.1-3.2.2.1 Area

- (1) Each exam/treatment room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 square meters).
- (2) Where an exam/treatment room is used for a population that includes individuals of size, a minimum clear floor area of 219 square feet (20.35 square meters) shall be provided.

2.1-3.2.2.2 Clearances

- (1) The exam/treatment room shall be sized to permit a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) at each side and at the foot of the exam table, bed, recliner, or chair.
- (2) Where the care population will include individuals of size, additional clearances shall be provided based on the size of the equipment and furniture to be used, including (but not limited to) lift equipment, expanded-capacity wheelchairs, exam table or bed, and resident seating.

2.1-3.2.3 Documentation Area

Accommodations for written or electronic documentation shall be provided.

2.1-3.2.4 Resident, Participant, and Patient Privacy

Provisions shall be made to preserve visual and speech privacy for the care population.

2.1-3.2.5 Handwashing Station

A handwashing station shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

2.1-3.2.6 Toilet Room

2.1-3.2.6.1 A toilet room shall be provided adjacent to or directly accessible to the exam/treatment room.

2.1-3.2.6.2 Toilet rooms shall be sized and configured to ~~accommodate~~ [comply with](#) accessibility standards that support independent use.

2.1-3.2.6.3 The toilet room shall contain the following:

- (1) Toilet
- (2) Handwashing station. The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall apply.
- (3) Mirror. The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (7) (Mirror) shall apply.

2.1-3.3 Accommodations for Telemedicine Services

2.1-3.3.1 General

2.1-3.3.1.1 Clinical telemedicine services

- (1) Where clinical telemedicine services are provided, the requirements in this section shall be met.
- (2) The requirements in this section shall not be applied to virtual visits that do not require a physical exam of the individual receiving care or visits that originate from a physician's or individual's living unit or private room.

2.1-3.3.1.2 Mobile telemedicine services

- (1) Nothing in the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* shall be construed as prohibiting the use of a telemedicine cart where moving an individual to the telemedicine room is impractical or impossible (e.g., in a nursing home or hospice facility).
- (2) Where portable equipment and peripheral devices will be used (e.g., telemedicine carts, digital cameras and task lighting, portable EKG devices, smartphones, roaming robots), space for secure storage shall be provided.

2.1-3.3.2 Telemedicine Room

2.1-3.3.2.1 General

- (1) A room that meets the requirements of Section 2.1-3.2 (Exam/Treatment Room) shall be provided for clinical telemedicine services.
- (2) Where volume does not justify provision of a dedicated telemedicine room, an office, exam/treatment room, or conference room shall be permitted to serve this purpose.

2.1-3.3.2.2 Space requirements. The telemedicine room shall be sized to accommodate the following:

- (1) An exam table situated within view of the camera
- (2) Telemedicine equipment (fixed or mobile)
- (3) Peripheral devices
- (4) An on-site caregiver or care provider
- (5) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) where hands-on exams will be provided
- (6) A documentation area
- (7) Placement of monitors, screens, or other projections of images or data where they are not visible to casual observers outside the telemedicine room

2.1-3.3.2.3 Privacy. The telemedicine room shall provide visual and speech privacy as indicated in Table 1.2-7 (Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces).

2.1-3.3.2.4 Acoustic considerations

- (1) Background noise. Telemedicine rooms shall comply with background noise levels in Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems).
- (2) Speech intelligibility. Telemedicine rooms shall comply with the minimum sound absorption coefficient in Table 1.2-4 (Minimum Design Room-Average Sound Absorption Coefficients) or 0.10 (absolute), whichever is greater.
- (3) Sound isolation. Telemedicine rooms shall achieve the minimum STC rating in Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).

2.1-3.3.2.5 Lighting

- (1) The room shall provide the ability for direct frontal lighting.
- (2) Means for controlling glare from natural and artificial light sources shall be provided.

2.1-3.3.2.6 Interior surfaces

- (1) Telemedicine room finishes and colors shall be selected to support natural rendition of skin tones.
- (2) Backdrop wall color shall have a light reflectance value of 30 to 40 percent.

2.1-3.3.2.7 Site identification. Facility identification shall be provided at the site so it appears in the transmitted image unless it is embedded in the telemedicine platform.

2.1-3.4 Wellness Center

Where wellness facilities are part of a residential care or support facility, see Chapter 5.2 (Specific Requirements for Wellness Centers) for requirements.

2.1-3.5 Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

Where rehabilitation therapy facilities are part of a residential care or support facility, see requirements in the following:

2.1-3.5.1 Facility chapters in Part 3 (Residential Health Facilities) and Part 4 (Residential Care and Support Facilities)

2.1-3.5.2 Chapter 5.3 (Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities)

2.1-3.6 – 2.1-3.7 Reserved

2.1-3.8 Support Areas for Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

2.1-3.8.1 General

2.1-3.8.1.1 Functional requirements

- (1) Identifiable spaces shall be provided for each operational function, but use of a space for multiple purposes shall be permitted as long as the space complies with the requirements for each purpose served.
- (2) Except where the word “room” or “office” is used, accommodation of support functions in a multipurpose area(s) shall be permitted.

2.1-3.8.1.2 Size. The size of each support area shall depend on the number and types of residents served.

2.1-3.8.1.3 Location

- (1) Support areas for resident care shall be located in or readily accessible to each resident unit.
- (2) Arrangement and location of support areas to serve more than one resident unit shall be permitted, but at least one such support area shall be located on each resident floor.

2.1-3.8.2 Staff Work Area

Resident care/living areas (units), hospice patient areas, participant activity areas, and outpatient rehabilitation areas shall have staff work areas in direct care locations.

2.1-3.8.3 – 2.1-3.8.10 Reserved

2.1-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room

Where a clean workroom or clean supply room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-3.8.11.1 General. The clean workroom or clean supply room shall be separate from and have no direct connection with the soiled workroom or soiled holding room.

2.1-3.8.11.2 Clean workroom

- (1) The clean workroom shall contain the following:
 - (a) Work counter
 - (b) Handwashing station. The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall apply.
 - (c) Storage facilities for clean supplies
- (2) The clean workroom shall be permitted to be combined with any of the following areas:
 - (a) Medication room. See Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations).
 - (b) Personal laundry facilities. See Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities).
 - (c) Clean linen storage. See Section 2.1-3.8.13.1 (Clean linen storage).

2.1-3.8.11.3 Clean supply room. A room used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean materials does not require a work counter and handwashing station.

2.1-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom ~~and~~ or Soiled Holding Room

~~Where a~~ Soiled workrooms ~~and~~ or soiled holding rooms ~~is provided, it~~ shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-3.8.12.1 General

- (1) Soiled workrooms and soiled holding rooms shall be separate from and have no direct connection with either clean workrooms or clean supply rooms.
- (2) Shared services
 - (a) The soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be permitted to be combined with the environmental services room described in Section 2.1-3.8.14 (Environmental Services Room) ~~for areas with small groups of residents.~~
 - (b) The soiled workroom ~~or soiled holding room~~ shall be permitted to be combined with personal laundry facilities (see Section 2.1-4.2.4) provided a wall or splash protection is provided between the clean and dirty areas and the airflow is designed to move from the ~~washing/drying area (i.e., clean area)~~ to the soiled ~~workroom or soiled holding room (i.e., dirty area)~~.
- (3) Ventilation. Soiled workrooms and soiled holding rooms shall be provided with means for ventilation, filtration, and exhaust. See Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for additional requirements.
- (4) Laundry chute. Where provided, the laundry chute shall meet the following requirements:
 - (a) Be directly accessed from a soiled workroom or soiled holding room on the resident unit
 - (b) Be dedicated to transporting and depositing laundry into a soiled workroom or soiled holding room at the bottom of the chute

2.1-3.8.12.2 Soiled workroom. The soiled workroom shall contain the following:

- (1) Work counter ~~Clinical sink or equivalent flushing rim fixture with a rinsing hose or bedpan washer~~
- (2) Utility sink for soaking
- (3) Handwashing station at or adjacent to the entrance to the room with unobstructed access. The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall apply.
- ~~(4)~~ Space for soiled linen receptacles
- ~~(5)~~ Space for waste receptacles

2.1-3.8.12.3 Soiled holding room. This room shall contain the following:

- (1) Handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser
- (2) Space for separate covered containers for waste and soiled linen

2.1-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.1-3.8.13.1 Clean linen storage. This storage shall meet the following requirements:

- (1) Clean linen shall be permitted to be stored in the clean workroom, the clean supply room, or a separate closet or using a covered cart distribution system.

- (2) Where a covered cart distribution system is used, storage of clean linen carts in a corridor alcove shall be permitted.

2.1-3.8.13.2 Storage for equipment and supplies for care and services. Storage space for equipment and supplies used by staff for resident, hospice patient, participant, and outpatient care and services shall be located immediately accessible to the areas where they are used.

- (1) Cabinets, closets, rooms, and alcoves shall be permitted to provide storage.
- (2) Storage shall not be permitted to encroach into the required corridor width.

2.1-3.8.13.3 Storage for mobility devices and support equipment. Storage shall be provided for resident-operated mobility devices and personal support equipment that is:

- (1) Sized to meet the needs of the care population.
- (2) Located out of the way of traffic and circulation.

2.1-3.8.13.4 General storage. General storage space shall be provided in the same building for furniture and equipment such as air mattresses, medical supplies, and housekeeping supplies and equipment.

2.1-3.8.14 Environmental Services Room

2.1-3.8.14.1 General

- (1) Location. A minimum of one environmental services room shall be provided for each floor and specific department or area (e.g., rehabilitation therapy departments/areas, loading dock receiving, pick-up areas).
- (2) Security. A means for securing the environmental services room shall be provided.

2.1-3.8.14.2 Space requirements. The size of the environmental services room shall be based on the size and number of housekeeping carts provided for each floor, department, or area.

2.1-3.8.14.3 Each environmental services room shall contain the following:

- (1) Service sink or floor-mounted mop sink
- (2) An area for handling chemicals
- (3) Storage space for housekeeping equipment, supplies, and chemicals

2.1-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.1-3.9.1 Staff Lounge Area

2.1-3.9.1.1 A staff lounge area that supports breaks and respite for caregivers and administrative staff shall be provided.

2.1-3.9.1.2 The staff lounge area shall be permitted to be shared by more than one resident, patient, or participant care area.

2.1-3.9.1.3 The staff lounge area shall provide access to the following:

- (1) Refrigerator

(2) Sink

(3) Space for microwave and other appliances

2.1-3.9.1.4 Space for vending machines shall be provided based on facility and staff needs.

2.1-3.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

2.1-3.9.2.1 Toilet room(s) for staff shall contain a toilet with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

2.1-3.9.2.2 Staff toilet rooms shall be permitted to be unisex.

2.1-3.9.3 Storage for Staff

Lockable storage shall be provided for staff members' personal effects.

2.1-4 Resident Support Facilities

2.1-4.1 Food Service Facilities

2.1-4.1.1 General

Facilities and equipment shall be provided to support the food services offered to staff, visitors, residents, patients, and/or participants.

2.1-4.1.1.1 Commercial kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.2 (Commercial Kitchen) for requirements.

2.1-4.1.1.2 Retail kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.3 (Retail Kitchen) for requirements.

2.1-4.1.1.3 Household kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.4 (Household Kitchen) for requirements.

2.1-4.1.1.4 Social activity kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.5 (Social Activity Kitchen) for requirements.

2.1-4.1.1.5 Outpatient therapy kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.6 (Outpatient Therapy Kitchen) for requirements.

2.1-4.1.1.6 Warming/serving kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.7 (Warming/Serving Kitchen) for requirements.

2.1-4.1.2 Commercial Kitchen

2.1-4.1.2.1 General

(1) Application. Where a commercial kitchen is provided, it shall not be permitted to serve as a household, social activity, or outpatient therapy kitchen.

(2) Location. Food receiving, storage, and preparation areas shall be located to support staff oversight of operations.

(3) Layout. The equipment and design layout shall provide a workflow that minimizes potential for cross-contamination of clean food and wares with contaminated trays from residents, participants, patients, staff, or visitors.

- (4) Controlled access. The commercial kitchen shall be designed to control access.
- (5) Regulations. Food service facilities and equipment shall comply with the requirements of:
 - (a) U.S. Food and Drug Administration
 - (b) U.S. Department of Agriculture
 - (c) Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
 - (d) NSF International

(6) Staff toilet room. A staff toilet room meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-3.9.2 (Staff Toilet Room) shall be located immediately accessible to the commercial kitchen where food service is centralized.

2.1-4.1.2.2 Food preparation areas. Where food services are provided on-site, the following elements, in the size and number appropriate for the type of food service selected, shall be provided:

- (1) Control station for managing food supplies
- (2) Handwashing station(s) in the food preparation area. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.
- (3) Food preparation facilities to accommodate the method of food preparation used
 - (a) Where conventional food preparation systems are used, space and equipment shall be provided for food preparation, cooking, and baking.
 - (b) Where convenience food service systems using frozen prepared meals, bulk packaged entrees, and individual packaged portions or systems using contracted, outsourced services are used, space and equipment shall be provided for thawing, portioning, cooking, and baking.
 - (c) Where “cook-chill” food preparation systems are used, space and equipment shall be provided for food preparation, cooking and baking, chilling, portioning, and reheating.
- (4) Ice-making equipment and drinking water source
 - (a) Location of ice-making equipment in the food preparation area or in a separate room shall be permitted as long as the equipment is directly accessible to the food preparation area.
 - (b) Ice-making equipment shall be cleanable.
 - (c) Ice-making equipment shall be self-dispensing if it is accessible to residents, participants, patients and/or visitors.
 - (d) Ice-making equipment under control of staff and not for use by residents, participants, patients, and/or visitors shall be permitted to be bin-type or self-dispensing.
 - (e) See Section 2.1-4.1.4.2 (7) (Access to self-dispensing drinking water and ice) for decentralized ice-making requirements.
 - (f) A filtered self-dispensing drinking water source shall be provided.

2.1-4.1.2.3 Assembly and distribution facilities. Depending on the care model, facilities shall be provided to support assembly and distribution of resident meals. These shall be permitted to be centralized or decentralized.

2.1-4.1.2.4 Warewashing facilities. Commercial-type warewashing equipment shall be provided.

- (1) Depending on the care model, warewashing space shall be provided in a room or an alcove separate from the food preparation and serving area.
 - (a) This shall be permitted to be centralized or decentralized.
 - (b) Where a cluster/neighborhood, household/small house or similar model of care is used, commercial warewashing may be decentralized and located in a household kitchen. See Section 2.1-4.1.4 (Household Kitchen) for requirements.
- (2) Space shall be provided for receiving, scraping, sorting, and stacking soiled tableware and for transferring clean tableware to point-of-use areas.
- (3) Handwashing stations shall be provided in or directly accessible to warewashing space(s). See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.
- (4) Warewashing facilities shall be designed to prevent contamination of clean wares or food preparation areas with soiled wares through cross-traffic.

2.1-4.1.2.5 Pot-washing facilities. Depending on the type of food service and the care model, pot-washing facilities shall be provided. These shall be permitted to be centralized or decentralized.

2.1-4.1.2.6 Support areas for the commercial kitchen

- (1) Offices(s). Office or desk space shall be provided immediately accessible to the kitchen.
- (2) Storage. The following shall be provided:
 - (a) Food storage space, including cold storage
 - (b) Storage areas and sanitizing facilities for cans, carts, and mobile-tray conveyors, where used
 - (c) Waste, storage, and recycling facilities that meet local health and building code requirements and provide access to the outside for direct pickup or disposal
- (3) Environmental services room
 - (a) An environmental services room shall be located immediately accessible to the commercial kitchen where food service is centralized.
 - (b) See Section 2.1-3.8.14 (Environmental Services Room) for room requirements.
- (4) Cold storage equipment
 - (a) Where provided, freezers, coolers, and refrigerators, including walk-in refrigerators, shall be fully insulated.
 - (b) Coolers, refrigerators, and freezers

- (i) Coolers, refrigerators, and freezers shall be capable of being thermostatically controlled to maintain desired temperature settings in increments of 2 degrees or less.
 - (ii) Coolers and refrigerators shall be capable of maintaining a temperature of 32°F (0°C).
 - (iii) Freezers shall be capable of maintaining a temperature of 20 degrees below 0°F (-17.78°C).
 - (iv) Coolers, refrigerators, and freezers shall be capable of indicating interior temperatures on the exterior of the equipment.
- (c) Walk-in refrigerators
- (i) Where provided, walk-in refrigerators shall have a view panel in the door and safety release mechanism for exit from the inside.
 - (ii) Shelving provided in the walk-in refrigerator shall be corrosion-resistant, cleanable, and constructed and anchored to support a load of at least 100 pounds per linear foot (45.36 kilograms/linear meter).
 - (iii) The interior of the walk-in refrigerator shall have built-in illumination.
- (5) Cart wash. Where carts are used, a designated cart wash area with a sloped floor, floor drain, and source of water and sanitizing agents shall be provided.

2.1-4.1.3 Retail Kitchen

2.1-4.1.3.1 General

(1) Application

- (a) Where a retail kitchen is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.
- (b) Where a retail kitchen is used as a commercial kitchen, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.2 (Commercial Kitchen).
- (c) The retail kitchen shall not be permitted to serve as a social activity or outpatient therapy kitchen.
- (d) A dining area shall be provided immediately accessible to the retail kitchen that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2 (Dining Areas).

(2) Location and layout

- (a) The design and location of the retail kitchen shall encourage participant and visitor use.
- (b) For facilities that also have a commercial kitchen, clear and unobstructed circulation paths for servers and food carts shall be provided.
- (c) Food receiving, storage, and preparation areas shall be located to support staff oversight of operations.

- (3) Regulations. Retail kitchen facilities and equipment shall comply with federal, state, and local building and health codes.

2.1-4.1.3.2 Design requirements. Facilities and equipment shall be provided to support the food services offered to staff, visitors, residents, patients, and/or participants.

2.1-4.1.3.3 Access to the retail kitchen. Physical access to the retail kitchen shall be restricted to staff.

2.1-4.1.4 Household Kitchen

2.1-4.1.4.1 General

- (1) Application. Where provided, the household kitchen shall be designed to support one or more of the following functions:
 - (a) Provision of nourishment between meals
 - (b) Cooking activities for residents and participants
 - (c) Food preparation by family members
 - (d) Preparation of meals by staff
 - (e) Completion of meal preparation begun in a commercial kitchen
- (2) Location and layout. The household kitchen shall be located immediately accessible to the household.
- (3) Regulations. Household kitchen facilities and equipment shall comply with federal, state, and local building and health codes.

2.1-4.1.4.2 Design requirements. Where a household kitchen is provided, it shall include the following:

- (1) Work countertop. Prep station countertops shall be made of porcelain, stainless steel, solid-surface materials, or impervious plastic laminate assembly.
- (2) Refrigerator
- (3) Food storage
- (4) Sink with faucet with anti-scalding mixing valve
- (5) Range, cooktop, oven, and/or any other cooking or heating device, where required in the functional program. These appliances shall be equipped with secured shutoffs where residents have access to the kitchen.
- (6) Food-warming and dishwashing equipment where required in the functional program
- (7) Access to self-dispensing drinking water and ice
 - (a) Ice for resident consumption shall be provided by ice-making equipment.
 - (b) Ice-making equipment shall be designed, located, and installed to minimize noise.
 - (c) Ice-making equipment shall be permitted to serve more than one food service facility.
- (8) A handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be located immediately accessible to the household kitchen. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.
- (9) Environmental services closet. Where food service is decentralized, an environmental services closet shall be located readily accessible to the household kitchen.

2.1-4.1.4.3 Resident access to the household kitchen. Where physical barriers to the household kitchen are not required by local or state authorities having jurisdiction, residents shall have access to the household kitchen.

2.1-4.1.5 Social Activity Kitchen

2.1-4.1.5.1 General

- (1) Application. Where a social activity kitchen is provided, it shall be designed to support life enhancement activities related to food preparation that are not central to regular meal delivery.
- (2) Location and layout. The social activity kitchen shall be located immediately accessible to social activity areas.

2.1-4.1.5.2 Design requirements. The social activity kitchen shall meet the following requirements:

- (1) Work areas, counters, and/or tables shall be designed to allow access by residents using resident-operated mobility devices.
- (2) Where prep station countertops are provided, they shall be made of porcelain, stainless steel, solid-surface materials, or impervious plastic laminate assembly.
- (3) The range, cooktop, and/or oven shall have secured shutoffs.
- (4) Food storage shall be provided.
- (5) Handwashing station(s) in the food preparation area shall be provided. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.
- (6) An area for practicing activities of daily living shall be provided.

2.1-4.1.6 Outpatient Therapy Kitchen

2.1-4.1.6.1 General

- (1) Application
 - (a) The outpatient therapy kitchen shall be designed to support cooking activities used for occupational and physical therapy.
 - (b) Where a functioning outpatient therapy kitchen (rather than a mock-up for therapy only) is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.
- (2) Location. The outpatient therapy kitchen shall be located immediately accessible to occupational and physical therapy service areas.

2.1-4.1.6.2 Design requirements. An outpatient therapy kitchen shall include the following:

- (1) Work counter
- (2) Refrigerator
- (3) Storage cabinets
- (4) Sink

- (5) Range, cooktop, and/or oven with emergency shutoffs
- (6) Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be located immediately accessible to the therapy kitchen.

2.1-4.1.7 Warming/Serving Kitchen

2.1-4.1.7.1 General

- (1) Application
 - (a) Where a warming/serving kitchen is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.
 - (b) Access. The warming/serving kitchen shall be capable of being secured.
- (2) Location. The warming/serving kitchen shall be located directly accessible to dining areas, household kitchen, or similar space where meals will be served to residents or participants.
- (3) Layout. The layout of the warming/serving kitchen shall provide a workflow that minimizes potential for cross-contamination of clean and soiled wares.
- (4) Regulations. Warming/serving kitchen facilities and equipment shall comply with federal, state, and local building and health codes.

2.1-4.1.7.2 Design requirements

- (1) Equipment in the size and number appropriate for the type of food service being accommodated shall be provided.
- (2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be provided in the warming/serving kitchen.

2.1-4.2 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

~~See the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for requirements.~~

2.1-4.2.1 General

2.1-4.2.1.1 Each facility shall have provisions for storing and processing clean and soiled/contaminated linen.

2.1-4.2.1.2 Location. Linen processing shall be permitted to take place in the facility, in a separate building on-site, or in an off-site laundry.

2.1-4.2.2 On-Site Linen Processing Facilities

2.1-4.2.2.1 Soiled workroom and clean linen handling areas

- (1) Soiled workroom. A separate room shall be provided for soiled linen receiving and holding that meets the requirements of 2.1-4.4.2 (Soiled Workroom) and the following requirements:
 - (a) A handwashing station with unobstructed access shall be provided in each room or area where soiled linen is processed or handled at or adjacent to the entrance to the room.
 - (b) The soiled workroom shall have self-closing doors to the exit access corridor.

(c) The soiled workroom shall have a clinical sink or equivalent flushing-rim fixture with a rinsing hose or bedpan washer.

(2) Clean inspection room or area

(a) If not provided as part of the clean linen storage room, a room or area shall be provided for inspection, removal of lint, mending, folding, assembling, and packaging of clean linen.

(b) Space for a table, shelving, and storage shall be provided.

(3) Clean linen storage room

(a) A clean linen storage and issuing room(s) shall be provided in addition to the linen storage required on the resident units.

(b) A clean linen storage room shall have self-closing doors to the exit access corridor.

(4) Cart storage area

(a) Separate areas shall be provided for parking of clean and soiled linen carts that do not encroach on circulation paths.

(b) Means shall be provided for cleaning linen carts on premises or for exchanging carts off premises.

(5) Service entrance. A service entrance protected from inclement weather shall be provided for loading and unloading linen where a separate building is used for processing laundry.

(6) Layout. Equipment shall be arranged to permit a sequential workflow from soiled to clean and minimize cross-traffic that might mix clean and soiled operations.

2.1-4.2.2.2 Laundry facilities

(1) Laundry processing room

(a) This room shall have space for commercial or industrial washing and drying equipment.

(b) Trench drain or trough

(i) The laundry processing room shall accommodate a trench, trough, or drain capable of handling the capacity of waste water discharge.

(ii) The trench, trough, or drain shall be equipped with a lint interceptor.

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in the laundry process room.

(3) Supply storage. Storage shall be provided for all supplies necessary for laundry operations.

2.1-4.2.3 Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Linen Processing

The following shall be provided where linen is processed off-site:

2.1-4.2.3.1 Soiled holding room. A soiled holding room meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-3.8.12.3 (Soiled holding room).

2.1-4.2.3.2 Service entrance. A service entrance protected from inclement weather. This shall be permitted to be shared with other services.

2.1-4.2.4 Personal Laundry Facilities

Personal laundry facilities shall provide the following requirements:

2.1-4.2.4.1 Washer and dryer

2.1-4.2.4.2 Work counter or table for sorting and folding laundry

2.1-4.2.4.3 Handwashing station meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) directly or immediately accessible to the laundry room.

2.1-4.2.4.4 The personal laundry facility shall be provided to handle, clean, and store linen according to acceptable methods of infection control as documented in the facility infection control risk assessment.

2.1-4.3 – 2.1-4.4 Reserved

2.1-4.5 Clean Workroom and Clean Supply Room

Where a clean workroom and/or a clean supply room is provided, they shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-4.5.1 General

Clean workrooms and clean supply rooms shall be separate from and have no direct connection with the soiled workroom or soiled holding room.

2.1-4.5.2 Clean Workroom

(1) The clean workroom shall contain the following:

- (a) Work counter
- (b) Handwashing station meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).
- (c) Storage facility for clean supplies

(2) The clean workroom shall be permitted to be shared with any of the following areas:

- (a) Medication room. The medication room shall comply with the requirements of Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations).
- (b) Personal laundry facility. The personal laundry facility shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities).
- (c) Clean linen storage. The clean linen storage shall comply with the requirements of Section 2.1-3.8.13.1 (Clean linen storage).

2.1-4.5.3 Clean Supply Room

A room used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean materials does not require a work counter and handwashing station.

2.1-5 Building Support Facilities

2.1-5.1 Materials Management

Where provided, the loading dock and receiving and breakout areas shall be permitted to be shared with other services.

2.1-5.2 Waste Management

2.1-5.2.1 Waste Collection and Storage Facilities

2.1-5.2.1.1 Facilities shall be provided for sanitary storage of waste and recyclables per local ordinances.

2.1-5.2.1.2 These facilities shall be separate from food preparation, personal hygiene, and other clean functions.

2.1-5.2.1.3 See Section 1.2-6.3.8 (Building Materials and Resources) for additional requirements.

2.1-5.2.2 Waste Disposal Facilities

Facilities for removal of waste (e.g., trash, medical waste) and recyclables shall be provided.

2.1-5.3 Environmental Services

2.1-5.3.1 Environmental services rooms shall be located throughout the facility as required to maintain a clean and sanitary environment.

2.1-5.3.2 The requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.14 (Environmental Services Room) shall apply.

2.1-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

2.1-5.4.1 Reserved

2.1-5.4.2 General Maintenance Area

2.1-5.4.2.1 A general maintenance area shall be provided.

2.1-5.4.2.2 In multibuilding configurations, the general maintenance area shall be permitted to be located either in each individual building on the campus or in one centralized location.

2.1-5.4.3 Facility Requirements

Room(s) or separate building(s) shall be provided for boilers, mechanical equipment, and electrical equipment.

2.1-5.4.4 Operations and Maintenance Records Storage

Provisions shall be made for storage of facility drawings, maintenance records, manuals, and similar records.

2.1-5.4.5 Maintenance Equipment and Supply Storage

2.1-5.4.5.1 A storage room shall be provided for building maintenance supplies.

2.1-5.4.5.2 Storage for solvents and flammable liquids shall comply with local, state, and federal code requirements.

2.1-5.4.5.3 Where grounds are maintained by in-house staff, yard equipment and supply storage areas shall be readily accessible to the areas to be maintained.

2.1-5.5 Mechanical and Electrical Equipment Room

2.1-5.5.1 Space Requirements

Space shall be provided for the required maintenance and repair of mechanical and electrical equipment.

2.1-5.5.2 Security

Mechanical and electrical equipment rooms shall be secured with controlled access.

2.1-5.6 Reserved

2.1-5.7 Non-Refrigerated Body-Holding Room

~~2.1-5.7.1 Where a non-refrigerated body holding room is provided, the path of travel from the body holding room to the transport pickup location shall not require passage through areas that are subject to occupancy by residents or the public.~~

2.1-5.7.2 Ventilation Requirements

~~Ventilation for the non-refrigerated body holding room shall comply with the requirements in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: Ventilation of Health Care Facilities.~~

2.1-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.1-6.1 Reserved

2.1-6.2 Public Areas

See sections 1.2-5.5.1 (Physical Environment Elements—Light) and 2.1-8.7.2 (Daylighting Systems in Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas) for lighting and daylighting requirements.

2.1-6.2.1 Vehicular Drop-Off and Pedestrian Entrance

A minimum of one marked, illuminated drop-off or entrance shall be reachable from grade level.

2.1-6.2.2 ~~Lobby~~ Entrance and Reception

2.1-6.2.2.1 General. Shared ~~lobbies~~ entrances and receptions shall be permitted in multi-occupancy buildings.

2.1-6.2.2.2 Entrance. A means for announcing arrival and gaining entry to the facility shall be provided.

(1) Check-in and receiving. A method for checking into and out of the facility, requesting information and receiving deliveries shall be provided.

(2) Waiting area(s) shall be provided.(a) Space for waiting shall be sized appropriately for the facility.(b) ~~2.1-6.2.2.3 Public toilet room.~~ A minimum of one toilet room shall be immediately accessible to the waiting area. ~~shall be readily accessible to the lobby.~~(c) Access to public communications services shall be provided.

2.1-6.2.2.3~~2~~ Storage for mobility devices. ~~Where a central lobby is provided, s~~Storage for resident-operated mobility devices that is sized appropriately to the facility shall be provided immediately accessible to the entry.

2.1-6.2.3 Mailboxes

Where a resident mailbox area is provided, it shall be accessible to residents.

2.1-6.2.4 Public Notice Area

Areas for posting required notices, documents, and other written materials shall be provided in public locations visible to and accessible to residents, staff, and visitors.

2.1-6.3 Administrative Areas**2.1-6.3.1 Office and Conference Space**

2.1-6.3.1.1 General. Offices or an open office area with private conference space shall be provided for business transactions, admissions, and social services and for the use of administrative and professional staff.

2.1-6.3.1.2 Conference or meeting space

- (1) Space for private interviews; staff, resident, and family meetings; conferences; and health education shall be sized to accommodate operational and activity needs.
- (2) Space shall include provisions for use of visual aids and technology.
- (3) Sharing of space by several services shall be permitted.

2.1-6.3.1.3 General office space. Office space shall be provided for staff and file storage.

2.1-6.3.1.4 Supply and copy room. Space for storage of files, office equipment, and supplies shall be provided.

2.1-7 Design and Construction Requirements**2.1-7.1 Building Codes and Standards****2.1-7.1.1 Building Codes**

All parts of a residential care and support facility shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the following:

2.1-7.1.1.1 Applicable building codes

2.1-7.1.1.2 Engineering practices and standards**2.1-7.1.1.3** Applicable sections of NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code***2.1-7.1.2 Construction Requirements**

2.1-7.1.2.1 Interior finishes. Interior finish materials used for architectural details, surfaces, and furnishings shall comply with the flame-spread limitations and smoke-production limitations in NFPA 101.

2.1-7.1.2.2 Insulation materials. Building insulation materials, unless sealed on all sides and edges with noncombustible material, shall have a flame-spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke-developed rating of 150 or less when tested in accordance with NFPA 255: *Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials*.

2.1-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings**2.1-7.2.1 General****2.1-7.2.1.1 Application**

(1) Applicable standards

- (a) All materials and products selected and specified for residential care and support facility design and construction projects shall meet local, state, and federal regulations and industry standards for infection control and assembly or construction.
- (b) National testing standards shall be used to verify whether a product or material provides specific characteristics.

(2) Selected materials and products shall comply with application and use requirements and shall support the findings of the safety risk assessment and model of care, which are documented in the functional program.

2.1-7.2.1.2 Characteristics and criteria for selecting materials and products

- (1) General. The effect of surface materials, colors, textures, and patterns on resident, staff, and visitor safety and on maintenance and life cycle performance shall be considered in the overall planning and design of the facility.
- (2) Safety risk assessment issues. Architectural detail, surface, and furnishing materials and products selected for residential care and support facilities and settings shall meet performance characteristics and criteria that address risks identified in the safety risk assessment.
 - (a) Reduction of resident falls and associated injuries. See Section 1.2-4.4 (Fall Risk and Prevention Assessment) for requirements.
 - (b) Reduction of medication errors
 - (i) Where medication areas are provided in the facility or setting, medication work surfaces shall be designed to reduce glare and reflectivity.
 - (ii) See Section 1.2-4.5 (Medication Safety Assessment) for additional requirements.

2.1-7.2.2 Architectural Details

Residential care and support facilities shall include architectural details designed to encourage [functional use ambulation](#) of long-term residents, short-term rehabilitation residents, and participants in nonresidential settings.

2.1-7.2.2.1 Corridors

(1) Width

- (a) Corridor widths shall meet applicable life safety and building code requirements.
- (b) The placement of drinking fountains, public telephones, vending machines, and wall-mounted items such as organizers, retractable computer workstations, etc., shall not restrict corridor traffic or reduce the corridor width below the minimum stipulated in applicable building codes and NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*.
- (c) The height of handrails, lean rails, and wall-mounted lighting fixtures shall comply with applicable accessibility standards referenced in Section 1.1-4.1 (Design Standards for Accessibility).

2.1-7.2.2.2 Ceiling height

(1) New construction. The minimum ceiling height shall be 8 feet (2.44 meters), with the following exceptions:

- (a) The minimum ceiling height in corridors and normally unoccupied rooms or areas shall be 7 feet 6 inches (2.29 meters).
- (b) In rooms containing ceiling-mounted equipment or fixtures in the stowed position, the minimum height from the floor to the lowest protruding element of the equipment or fixture when it is in the stowed position shall be 7 feet (2.13 meters).
- (c) The minimum height above the floor of suspended tracks, rails, and pipes located in normal traffic paths shall be 7 feet 6 inches (2.29 meters) above the floor.

(2) Renovation. In renovation projects where existing conditions make compliance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.2 (Ceiling height) impossible, see Section 1.1-3.1.2 (Renovation—Exceptions).

2.1-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware

(1) Door type. See requirements in facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.

(2) Door openings

- (a) Door openings shall be sized based on the model of care and the needs of the care population to allow proper clearance for:
 - (i) Ambulation of residents
 - (ii) Passage of the following:
 - Portable/mobile mechanical lifts
 - Shower gurney devices
 - Shower chairs

- Equipment
- Beds
- Resident-operated mobility devices
- Carts

(b) Architecturally framed and trimmed door openings shall be permitted, provided a minimum height of 6 feet 8 inches (2.03 meters) is maintained.

(3) Reserved

(4) Door hardware. See requirements in facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.

(5) Doors for resident bathing/toilet facilities. See requirements in facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.

(6) Insect screens

(a) With the exception of an approved exit door, exterior doors used for ventilation purposes shall include insect screens.

(b) Where regionally inappropriate, this requirement shall not apply.

2.1-7.2.2.4 Thresholds and expansion joint covers

(1) Thresholds shall be designed to facilitate use by rolling traffic.

(2) Thresholds, expansion/seismic joints, and covers shall meet all local, state, and federal requirements.

2.1-7.2.2.5 Windows

(1) General

(a) Windows shall comply with applicable building codes.

(b) Resident rooms, suites, and dwelling units shall have exterior window(s).

(c) For requirements that address safety risks (e.g., resident elopement, falls from windows) for residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and cognitive and developmental disabilities, see Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (2)(a)(v) (Physical environment elements for risk reduction—Operable windows).

(d) For requirements in addition to those in this section, see:

(i) Section 1.2-5.5.1 (Physical Environment Elements—Light)

(ii) Section 2.1-8.7 (Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems)

(2) Sill height. Windows in resident rooms, suites, and dwelling units shall have sills located no higher than 36 inches (91.44 centimeters) above the finished floor.

(3) Insect screens

(a) Operable exterior windows that may be left open shall have insect screens.

(b) Where regionally inappropriate, this requirement shall not apply.

2.1-7.2.2.6 Reserved

2.1-7.2.2.7 Glazing materials

- (1) Glazing materials shall meet all local, state, and federal requirements.
- (2) Glazing materials shall be readily accessed for cleaning and maintenance.

2.1-7.2.2.8 Handwashing stations

- (1) General. Where handwashing stations are provided in a residential care or support facility, the requirements in this section shall be met.
 - (a) The number and placement of handwashing stations shall be determined by the infection control risk assessment (ICRA).
 - (b) Hand sanitation dispensers shall be permitted to be used in lieu of handwashing stations as determined by the ICRA.
 - (c) Handwashing stations in resident care areas shall be located so they are visible and access to them is unobstructed.
- (2) Sinks. For sink and fitting requirements, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.2 (Handwashing station sink).
- (3) Handwashing station countertops
 - (a) Handwashing station countertops and their substrates shall be moisture-resistant.
 - (b) Handwashing sinks set into countertops shall include a water-tight seal.
- (4) Design of handwashing stations shall not permit storage in casework beneath the sink basin or in areas below a sink open to the floor.
- (5) Provisions for drying hands. Provisions for hand drying shall be required at all handwashing stations.
 - (a) Handwashing stations shall include a hand-drying device that does not require hands to contact the dispenser.
 - (b) These provisions shall be enclosed to protect against dust or soil and to assure single-unit dispensing.
 - (c) Hot air dryers shall be permitted unless the care population dictates otherwise.
 - (d) Where provided, hand towels shall be directly accessible to sinks.
- (6) Cleansing agent:
 - [\(a\) Handwashing stations shall include liquid or foam soap dispensers.](#)
 - [\(b\) Soap dispensers shall be located to prevent dispenser from unintended activation.](#)
- (7) Mirror. A mirror shall be provided at each resident handwashing station.
 - (a) Mirror placement shall allow for use by both wheelchair occupants and ambulatory persons.

- (b) Top and bottom edges of mirrors shall be at levels usable by individuals either sitting or standing.
- (c) A separate full-length mirror shall be permitted to serve as the required mirror.

2.1-7.2.2.9 Grab bars

- (1) Grab bars shall comply with local, state, and federal requirements.
- (2) Grab bars shall be installed at toilets and showers in addition to other locations required to meet accessibility requirements in resident toilet rooms, showers, and bathing facilities.
- (3) Alternative grab bar configurations
 - (a) Alternative grab bar configurations shall be permitted when the alternate configurations provide ~~accessibility~~ an equivalent solution to or greater than that required in other applicable codes.
 - (b) Evaluation of the care population shall be considered in determining alternative grab bar configurations that meet specific resident needs.
- (4) For wall-mounted grab bars, a minimum clearance of 1.5 inches (3.81 centimeters) from walls shall be provided.
- (5) Concentrated load requirements
 - (a) Grab bars, including those that are part of fixtures such as soap dishes and toilet paper holders, shall be anchored to sustain a minimum concentrated load of 250 pounds (113.4 kilograms).
 - (b) Grab bars installed in areas intended for use by individuals of size shall be anchored to sustain a minimum concentrated load of 800 pounds (362.87 kilograms).
- (6) Grab bars shall have a finish value that contrasts with the adjacent wall surface.
- (7) Grab bars shall be returned to the wall or floor with eased corners where a mitered corner condition exists.

2.1-7.2.2.10 Handrails and lean rails

- (1) Application
 - (a) Handrails shall comply with local, state, and federal requirements referenced in Section 1.1-4.1 (Design Standards for Accessibility) as amended in this section.
 - (b) Use of alternative handrail cross-sections and configurations that support mobility shall be permitted.
- (2) All stairways and ramps shall have handrails.
- (3) Egress corridors
 - (a) Where egress corridors are defined by walls, handrails or lean rails shall be provided as required in the facility chapters in this document.
 - (b) Handrails in egress corridors shall not be required to cross areas that are open to the corridor and ~~in~~ adjoining the direct path of travel.

- (c) Handrails in egress corridors shall not be required in the following locations:
- (i) Behind doors that normally remain open or do not have closers
 - (ii) In corridor alcoves ~~in~~ [adjoining](#) the direct path of travel
 - (iii) Behind fixed furniture permitted within the corridor by other regulations
 - (iv) In nonresidential corridors
 - (v) In dwelling or sleeping units
 - (vi) Across windows less than 10 feet (3.05 meters) in width
- (4) A handrail shall be provided for each clear corridor wall length exceeding 24 inches (60.96 centimeters).
- (5) A minimum clearance of 1.5 inches (3.81 centimeters) shall be provided between the handrail and the wall.
- (6) Terminations of handrails or lean rails shall return to the wall or floor.
- (7) Handrails, lean rails, supports, and fasteners shall have a smooth surface that is free of rough edges.
- (8) Handrails or lean rails shall have eased edges or corners.
- (9) The top of the surface of handrails or lean rails shall be no higher than 32 inches (81.28 centimeters) minimum and 38 inches (96.52 cm) maximum above the floor surface.

2.1-7.2.2.11 – 2.1-7.2.2.12 Reserved

2.1-7.2.2.13 Protection from heated surfaces

- (1) Emergency shutoffs shall be provided in resident areas where heated surfaces are used.
- (2) These locations shall be identified on construction documents.

2.1-7.2.2.14 Decorative water features:

- [\(1\) Provision of decorative water features shall be permitted in residential care and support facilities.](#)
- [\(2\) The design of indoor features shall meet the following criteria:](#)
 - [\(a\) Aerosol exposure with the water shall be prevented \(e.g., bubble walls\), or](#)
 - [\(b\) Where there is aerosol exposure with the water the following requirements shall apply:](#)
 - [\(i\) Water disinfection systems shall be applied to maintain documented disinfectant residual at all times while the system is operating.](#)
 - [\(ii\) No heat sources shall be located near the water feature that would result in an increase in water temperature.](#)
 - [\(iii\) When located in an indoor air-conditioned space, all portions of the fountain including sumps and reservoirs shall be located in an air-conditioned space.](#)

- (iv) A water management plan for control of fountain shall be developed and maintained.
- (3) Aquariums shall be enclosed to prevent resident or visitor contact with the water. Aquariums are not subject to exhaust ventilation recommendations.
- (4) An interactive ornamental fountain that is not routinely drained and flushed shall comply with minimum disinfection requirements (e.g., swimming pool code disinfection requirements, infection prevention disinfection standards).
- (5) Water features located outside, in atriums, or in enclosed spaces with no air-conditioning (e.g., conservatories, greenhouses, spaces that are enclosed and ventilated by means other than mechanical ventilation) shall be permitted.

2.1-7.2.3 Surfaces

Light reflectance values (LRV) of all surfaces shall comply with ANSI/IES RP-28: *Lighting and the Visual Environment for Older Adults and the Visually Impaired*.

2.1-7.2.3.1 Flooring and wall bases

- (1) Flooring surfaces shall meet the needs of residents, participants, or patients and be cleanable and wear-resistant for the location.
- (2) Smooth transitions shall be provided between different flooring materials.
- (3) Flooring surfaces shall allow for ease of ambulation and self-propulsion.
- (4) Flooring surfaces shall allow easy movement of all wheeled equipment used in the facility.
- (5) Flooring surfaces, including those on stairways, shall be stable, firm, and slip-resistant.
 - (a) The slip resistance ratings of flooring surfaces shall be appropriate for the area of use—for dry or wet conditions and for use on ramps and slopes.
 - (b) Slip-resistant flooring products shall be used for surfaces in bathing areas and rooms, wet areas, and ramps and entries from exterior to interior spaces.
 - (c) Carpet in resident areas shall be installed to prevent trip hazards or interference with the care population's use of resident-operated mobility devices and assistive ambulation devices and staff use of carts and equipment.
- (6) Areas subject to frequent wet-cleaning methods
 - (a) The floors and wall bases of kitchens, soiled workrooms, toilet rooms, and other areas subject to wet-cleaning methods shall be constructed of materials that are not physically affected by germicidal or other types of cleaning solutions.
 - (b) Areas subject to wet cleaning shall have floors that are homogeneous and have sealed joints.
 - (c) Wall bases in areas that require wet cleaning (e.g., soiled and clean utility rooms, environmental services rooms with mop sinks) shall be continuous, integral or sealed to the floor and the wall, and constructed without voids.
- (7) Food preparation areas

- (a) Floors in areas used for food preparation and assembly shall be water-resistant.
 - (b) Floor surfaces, including tile joints, shall be resistant to food acids.
 - (c) Floor construction in food preparation areas shall be free of spaces that can harbor pests. All joints shall be sealed.
 - (d) Slip-resistant flooring products shall be used throughout kitchens, including wet areas.
- (8) Highly polished flooring or flooring finishes that create glare shall be avoided.
- (9) Floor openings for pipes, ducts, or conduits as well as joints at structural elements shall be tightly sealed.
- (10) All changes of level (i.e., stairs, steps, and ramps) shall have a strong value contrast between vertical and horizontal surfaces.

2.1-7.2.3.2 Walls and wall protection

(1) Wall finishes

- (a) Wall finishes shall be cleanable ~~washable~~.
- (b) Wall finishes near plumbing fixtures shall be:
 - (i) Smooth
 - (ii) ~~Scrubbable~~ Cleanable
 - (iii) Able to be disinfected
 - (iv) ~~Moisture-resistant~~
- (c) Wall surfaces in areas routinely subjected to wet spray or splatter (e.g., kitchens, housekeeping closets) shall be water-resistant.
- (d) In occupied spaces, wall surfaces shall have a matte, flat, eggshell, semi-gloss, or equivalent finish.
- (e) In food preparation areas, wall construction, finish, and trim, including joints between walls and floors, shall be free of insect- and rodent-harboring spaces.
- (f) Wall openings for pipes, ducts, and conduits as well as joints at structural elements shall be sealed.

(2) Wall protection

- (a) Wall, door, and corner protection shall be provided in areas where movable equipment is present.
- (b) Wall protection and corner guards shall be durable and ~~scrubbable~~ able to be cleaned and disinfected.
- (c) Sharp, protruding edges shall be avoided.
- (d) Acoustics shall be considered when selecting wall finishes. See Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) for requirements.

2.1-7.2.3.3 Ceilings

- (1) Ceiling surfaces shall have a matte or satin finish to diffuse light and prevent reflected glare.
- (2) Ceiling surfaces in kitchens, laundry facilities, resident bathrooms, central bathing rooms, staff showers, soiled workrooms, and environmental services facilities shall be one of the following:
 - (a) Sealed, monolithic, ~~and scrubbable~~ gypsum board that is able to be cleaned and disinfected
 - (b) A lay-in ceiling. Where a lay-in ceiling is provided, it shall include the following:
 - (i) A noncorrosive grid
 - (ii) Ceiling tiles that are smooth, able to be cleaned and disinfected ~~scrubbable~~, nonabsorptive, and non-perforated, ~~and capable of withstanding cleaning~~
- (3) Color value
 - (a) The color/value of ceiling surfaces shall have a light reflectance value in the range of 75–90 percent to maximize distribution of light in a space.
 - (b) Lower light reflectance values for specialty spaces identified in the functional program shall be permitted.

2.1-7.2.4 Furnishings

2.1-7.2.4.1 General. The requirements in this section shall apply to casework, millwork, and built-ins that are fixed in a space or room as well as movable furniture and window treatments in residential care and support facilities.

2.1-7.2.4.2 Casework, millwork, and built-ins

- (1) In resident use areas, corners shall be rounded or eased.
- (2) Casework, millwork, and built-ins shall be in contrasting colors/values to the walls.
- (3) Casework hardware shall have a value contrast to the casework.

2.1-7.2.4.3 Furniture

- (1) Furniture provided in resident, patient, and participant areas and community spaces shall be designed to support resident transfer and weight-bearing requirements and ambulation.
- (2) Furniture selected shall have rounded and eased edges.
- (3) Furniture selected shall be upholstered with impervious materials in locations where infection control and incontinence are a concern.

2.1-7.2.4.4 Window treatments and privacy curtains

- (1) Privacy curtains and window treatments shall comply with NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*.
- (2) Window treatments shall be provided in resident areas to diffuse the daylight and control glare.
- (3) Window treatments provided in resident accommodations shall be designed for operation by the resident.

(4) Operational requirements and the type of care provided shall dictate the need for privacy curtains.

2.1-8 Building Systems

2.1-8.1 Building System Design

~~2.1-8.1.1~~ Facilities shall have building systems that are designed and installed in a manner that provides for the safety, comfort, and well-being of residents, participants, and patients.

~~2.1-8.1.2~~ The primary goal in building system design shall be to support resident, participant, and patient needs and/or operational functions.

~~2.1-8.1.3~~ Secondary goals in building system design shall be reduced energy consumption and increased energy efficiency.

2.1-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

2.1-8.2.1 General

2.1-8.2.1.1 Application

Basic HVAC system requirements for residential care and support facilities are defined in this section. ~~See the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for additional requirements.~~

2.1-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning

- (1) All occupied rooms and areas in the facility shall be designed to provide continuous ventilation.
- (2) Although natural ventilation via operable windows shall be permitted, mechanical ventilation shall be provided for all occupiable rooms and areas in the facility.

(3) Ventilation and space conditioning system levels

(a) Level 1 ventilation and space conditioning

(i) Ventilation systems shall be designed to provide control of environmental comfort, asepsis, and odor control in resident spaces.

(ii) Design of the ventilation system shall provide air movement that is generally from clean to less clean areas. If any form of variable-air-volume or load-shedding system is used for energy conservation, it shall not compromise the pressure-balancing relationships or the minimum air changes required in Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*.

(iii) See Table 9-1 in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for ventilation requirements intended to provide for comfort and asepsis and odor control in spaces that directly affect resident care.

(iv) For spaces not specifically listed in Table 9-1 in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*:

- Ventilation requirements shall be those for functionally equivalent spaces in Table 9-1 in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*.
 - Where spaces with prescribed rates are included in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality* or ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* and Table 9-1 in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*, the higher of the air change rates shall be applied.
- (v) Air change rates. The minimum number of total air changes per hour indicated in Table 9-1 in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* shall be either supplied for positive pressure rooms or exhausted for negative pressure rooms.
- For spaces that are required by Table 9-1 in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* to have a negative pressure relationship but are not required to be exhausted, the supply airflow rate shall be used to compute the required minimum total air changes per hour.
 - For spaces that require a positive or negative pressure relationship, the number of air changes per hour can be reduced when the space is unoccupied as long as the required pressure relationship to adjoining spaces is maintained while the space is unoccupied, and the minimum number of air changes indicated is reestablished whenever the space is occupied.
- (vi) Use of controls intended to switch the required pressure relationships between spaces from positive to negative, and vice versa, shall not be permitted.
- (vii) For air-handling systems serving multiple spaces, system minimum outdoor air quantity shall be calculated using one of the following methods:
- As the sum of the individual space requirements
 - By the “ventilation rate procedure” (multiple zone formula) described in Section 6.2 (Ventilation Rate Procedure) in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1. The minimum outdoor air change rate listed in this standard shall be interpreted as the V_{oz} (zone outdoor airflow) for purposes of this calculation.
- (b) Level 2 ventilation and space conditioning
- (i) Resident rooms and apartments in residential occupancies shall comply with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements.
- (ii) Spaces intended for human occupancy in buildings, except those in resident rooms and apartments in residential occupancies, shall comply with the following standards:
- ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality* for nonresident rooms and apartments areas
 - ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements for resident rooms and apartments

(4) Outdoor air intakes and exhaust discharges. Equipment shall comply with Table 5-1 (Air Intake Minimum Separation Distance) in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1.

2.1-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

2.1-8.2.2.1 Efficiency. ~~The mechanical system shall be subject to general review for operational efficiency and life cycle cost.~~

~~(1) Recognized engineering procedures shall be followed for the most economical and effective results.~~

~~(2) Equipment selection and system design shall support resident safety and comfort. In no case shall resident comfort or safety be sacrificed for energy conservation.~~

~~(3) Facility design consideration shall include site, building mass, orientation, fenestration, and other features relative to passive and active energy systems. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for additional information.~~

~~**2.1-8.2.2.2 Air-handling systems with unitary equipment that serve only one room.** See Table 1.2-4 (Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems) for noise considerations.~~

2.1-8.2.2.23 System valves. Supply and return mains and risers for cooling, heating, and steam systems shall be equipped with valves to isolate the various sections of each system. Each piece of equipment shall have valves at the supply and return ends.

2.1-8.2.2.34 Acoustic considerations ~~for outdoor mechanical equipment~~

~~(1) The requirements for noise criteria shall comply with Table 1.2-4 (Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems).~~

~~(2) The requirements for outdoor mechanical equipment and noise and vibration mitigation shall comply with tables 1.2-6.1.2 (Site Exterior Noise) and 1.2-6.1.7 (Design Criteria for Building Vibration).~~

~~(3) Outdoor mechanical equipment shall not produce sound that exceeds daytime and nighttime noise limits at neighboring properties as required by local ordinance.~~

2.1-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

~~**2.1-8.2.3.1 Fuel-fired equipment rooms.** Rooms with fuel-fired equipment shall be provided with outdoor air to maintain equipment combustion rates and limit space temperatures.~~

~~**2.1-8.2.3.2 Areas of refuge.** Areas of refuge shall be heated or cooled as determined by the geographic location of the facility or setting.~~

2.1-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

2.1-8.2.4.1 General. See In the absence of local, state, or federal requirements, see the following documents for requirements in addition to the requirements in this section:

(1) *International Energy Conservation Code*

(2) *NFPA 255: Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials*

(3) *NFPA 101: Life Safety Code*

2.1-8.2.4.2 Thermal conditions

(1) The planning design and construction of new and renovated residential care and support facilities shall include ~~identification of desired outcomes for staff and residents and level of~~ control of systems that contribute to thermal conditions and human comfort for staff and residents to include:-

~~(2) The planning process for new and renovated residential health, care, and support facilities shall include:~~

- (a) Evaluation of care population in relation to thermal conditions
- (b) Evaluation of heat-producing building systems ~~that affect~~ for thermal conditions
- (c) Evaluation of building systems that affect thermal controls in resident rooms, staff areas, and common spaces

~~(23)~~ See Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) for additional requirements.

2.1-8.2.4.3 Thermal insulation

(1) General

- (a) Insulation shall be provided in the building to conserve energy, protect personnel, and prevent vapor condensation.
- (b) Existing accessible insulation in identified areas of work shall be inspected, repaired, and/or replaced in compliance with current code requirements.

(2) Vapor barrier

- (a) Insulation on cold surfaces (e.g., equipment, pipes, ductwork) shall include an exterior vapor barrier.
- (b) A separate vapor barrier shall not be required for material that will not absorb or transmit moisture.

~~2.1-8.2.4.4 Acoustic insulation. See Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) for requirements.~~

2.1-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

2.1-8.2.5.1 HVAC ductwork humidifiers. ~~(1) Duct humidifiers. If~~ Where duct humidifiers are humidification is provided, the following requirements shall be met:

- ~~(1a)~~ Where duct humidifiers are located upstream of the final filters, the humidifiers shall be placed at least twice the rated distance for full moisture absorption upstream of the final filters.
- ~~(2b)~~ Ductwork with duct-mounted humidifiers shall have a means of water removal.
- ~~(3e)~~ Humidifiers shall be connected to airflow proving switches that prevent humidification unless the required volume of airflow is present or high-limit humidistats are provided.
- ~~(4d)~~ All duct takeoffs shall be sufficiently downstream of the humidifier to assure complete moisture absorption.
- ~~(5e)~~ Steam or adiabatic atomizing humidifiers shall be used. Use of reservoir-type water spray or evaporative pan humidifiers shall not be permitted.

2.1-8.2.5.2 Exhaust systems

- (1) To enhance the efficiency of recovery devices required for energy conservation, combined exhaust systems shall be permitted.
- (2) Fans serving exhaust systems shall be located at the discharge end and shall be readily serviceable. Fans located in the mechanical equipment room where positive pressure exhaust ductwork is sealed in accordance with SMACNA Seal Class A shall be permitted.

2.1-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

For airborne infection isolation room requirements, requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.5.1 (6)(c) (Airborne infection isolation room: Special design elements—Ventilation).

2.1-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

Rooms containing heat-producing equipment (e.g., laundry or computer rooms) shall be mechanically or naturally ventilated.

2.1-8.3 Electrical Systems

2.1-8.3.1 General

2.1-8.3.1.1 Applicable standards. All electrical material and equipment, including conductors, controls, and signaling devices, shall be listed, installed, and tested in compliance ~~accordance~~ with applicable sections of:

- (1) NFPA 70: National Electrical Code-
- (2) NFPA 99: Health Care Facilities Code

2.1-8.3.1.2 Testing and documentation. ~~All electrical installations~~ Electrical power and low-voltage installations ~~systems~~ shall be tested and documented to demonstrate ~~verify~~ that equipment installation operates as intended or designed.

2.1-8.3.2 Electrical Power Distribution ~~Power-Generating and Power-Storing Equipment~~

2.1-8.3.2.1 Switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, transformers, and automatic transfer switches. ~~Essential electrical service~~ Switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, transformers, and automatic transfer switches shall be:

- (1) Located in a room or enclosure that meets the requirements of NFPA 70: National Electric Code
- (2) Accessible to authorized persons only
- (3) Located in an environment that meets the temperature and humidity requirements of the equipment

~~Applicable standards~~

- (a) ~~At minimum, nursing homes or sections thereof shall have essential electrical systems as required in:~~
 - (i) ~~NFPA 99: Health Care Facilities Code~~

~~(ii) NFPA 110: *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, requirements that address nursing homes~~

~~(iii) NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*, requirements that address nursing homes~~

~~(b) Requirements for emergency lighting in nursing homes shall be dictated by local codes according to the care model.~~

~~(2) Shared service. Where the nursing home is a distinct part of or served by an acute care hospital on the same campus, required emergency lighting and power shall be permitted to be provided by the hospital essential electrical system.~~

~~(3) Where fuel for electricity generation is stored on-site, the following shall be required:~~

~~(a) Storage capacity shall be sufficient to provide continuous operation in accordance with state requirements.~~

~~(b) Fuel storage for electricity generation shall be separate from heating fuel storage.~~

2.1-8.3.2.2 **Panelboards** **Generators**

(1) Where panelboards serving life safety branch circuits are required, they shall be permitted to serve floors immediately above and/or immediately below the level where the panel is located.

(2) Where panelboards serving critical branch circuits are required, they shall be located on each floor where services are provided.

(3) New panelboards shall not be located in exit enclosures or exit passageways.

2.1-8.3.3 **Power-Generating and Power-Storing Equipment** **Electrical Receptacles**

2.1-8.3.3.1 **Essential electrical system**

(1) ~~Applicable standards~~ In the absence of federal, state, and local requirements, essential power shall be provided in accordance with the following:

~~(a) At minimum, nursing homes or sections thereof shall have essential electrical systems as required in:~~

~~(a) NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*~~

~~(b) NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*~~

~~(c) NFPA 110: *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*~~

(2) Shared service. Where the ~~facility nursing home~~ is a distinct part of or served by an acute care hospital on the same campus, requirement emergency ~~lighting and~~ power shall be permitted to be provided by the hospital essential electrical system.

(3) ~~In the absence of federal, state, and local requirements, Where fuel for electricity generation is stored on-site fuel storage, the following shall be required: capacity shall be sufficient to provide meet the requirements of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code* and permit~~ continuous operation at the 100-percent-rated load of the energy source for a minimum of 24 hours.

2.1-8.3.3.2 Generators. Exhaust systems (including locations, mufflers, and vibration isolators) for internal combustion engines shall [meet the requirements in tables 1.2-3 \(Categorization of Residential Care and Support Facility Sites by Exterior Ambient Sound with Design Criteria for Sound Isolation of Exterior Shell in New Construction\) and 1.2-5 \(Maximum Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Generated by Building Systems\)](#) ~~shall be designed and installed to minimize noise.~~

2.1-8.3.4~~3~~ Electrical Receptacles

2.1-8.3.4~~3~~-1 Duplex receptacles. Convenience duplex receptacles shall be provided as follows:

(1) Receptacles in corridors. Duplex grounded receptacles for general use shall be installed a maximum of 50 feet (15.24 meters) apart in all corridors and within 25 feet (7.62 meters) of corridor ends.

(2) [Electrical receptacles for resident areas shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-1 \(Requirements for Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces\).](#)

~~(2) Receptacles in resident rooms and dwelling units~~

~~(a) Each resident room shall have duplex grounded receptacles, including at least one on each wall.~~

~~(b) See facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for other requirements.~~

2.1-8.3.4~~3~~.2 Essential electrical system receptacles

(1) Where an essential electrical system is provided, electrical receptacle cover plates or electrical receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system shall be distinctively colored or marked for identification.

(2) If color is used for identification purposes, the same color shall be used throughout the facility.

2.1-8.3.4~~3~~.3 Ground-fault circuit interrupter receptacles. Ground-fault circuit interrupters (GFCIs) shall comply with NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*.

2.1-8.3.5~~4~~ Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas

2.1-8.3.5~~4~~.1 Where ventilators are used, battery backup and ~~or other~~ essential electrical system backup shall be provided.

2.1-8.3.5~~4~~.2 Where ventilators are used in a facility or setting that has essential electrical power, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) Dedicated circuit(s). This paragraph shall apply to both new construction and renovation projects where ventilator-dependent residents will be part of the care population.

(a) A minimum of one dedicated essential electrical system circuit per bed for ventilator-dependent residents and hospice patients shall be provided in addition to the normal system receptacles at each bed location required by NFPA 70. This circuit shall be provided with a minimum of two duplex receptacles identified for emergency use.

(b) Additional essential electrical system circuits and receptacles shall be provided where the electrical life support needs of the resident or hospice patient exceed the minimum requirements stated in this paragraph.

(2) Essential electrical system connections

- (a) Heating equipment provided for ventilator-dependent resident rooms shall be connected to the essential electrical system.
- (b) Task lighting connected to the essential electrical system shall be provided for each ventilator-dependent resident room.

2.1-8.4 Plumbing Systems

2.1-8.4.1 General

Unless otherwise specified herein, ~~In the absence of local and state plumbing codes,~~ all plumbing systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with ~~the International Plumbing Code~~ locally adopted plumbing code.

2.1-8.4.2 Plumbing and Other Piping Systems

2.1-8.4.2.1 General piping and valves. All piping, except control-line tubing, shall be identified.

2.1-8.4.2.2 Potable water supply systems

(1) Capacity.

- ~~(a) Systems shall be designed to supply water at pressures sufficient to operate all fixtures and equipment during maximum demand.~~
- ~~(b)~~ Supply capacity for hot- and cold-water piping shall be determined on the basis of fixture units using recognized engineering standards.

(2) Valves. Each water service main, branch main, riser, and branch to a group of fixtures shall have valves.

- (a) Stop valves shall be provided for each fixture.
- (b) Access panels shall be provided at all valves where required.
- (c) Valves shall be tagged, and a valve schedule shall be provided to the owner/operator for permanent record and reference.

(3) Backflow prevention

- (a) Systems shall be protected against cross-connection in accordance with AWWA M14: *Backflow Prevention and Cross-Connection Control: Recommended Practices* ~~or the International Association of Plumbing & Mechanical Official's (IAPMO) *Backflow Prevention Reference Manual.*~~
- (b) Vacuum breakers or backflow prevention devices shall be installed on hose bibs and supply nozzles used to connect hoses or tubing to housekeeping sinks and, where used, to bedpan-flushing attachments.

(4) Water Age

- (a) The use of plumbing fixtures with flow rates lower than legally required (e.g., "low-flow fixtures") shall be prohibited.

(b) Plumbing fixtures shall be located in such a manner to minimize the distance between fixtures in accordance with the functional program.

(c) Plumbing fixtures shall be located in such a manner to minimize the distance from the nearest source of hot water (e.g., water heater, recirculated main/branch, heat trace) and the plumbing fixture in accordance with the functional program.

2.1-8.4.2.3 Heated potable water distribution systems

- (1) General. Provisions shall be included in the heated potable water distribution system to limit the amount of *Legionella* bacteria and other opportunistic waterborne pathogens.
- (2) Recirculation of hot water. Heated potable water distribution systems serving resident areas shall be under constant recirculation to provide continuous hot water at each hot water outlet or to provide alternative means for maintaining hot water.
 - (a) Non-recirculated fixture branch piping shall not exceed 25 feet (7.62 meters) in length.
 - (b) Alternative means shall be permitted to include the installation of instantaneous systems or another type of water heating system at point of use.
- (3) Elimination of dead-end piping
 - (a) Installation of dead-end piping (risers with no flow, branches with no fixture) shall not be permitted.
 - (b) In renovation projects, dead-end piping shall be removed.
 - (c) Installation of empty risers, mains, and branches installed for future use shall be permitted.
- (4) Capacity and temperature
 - (a) The water-heating system shall have supply capacity at the temperatures and amounts indicated in Table 2.1-1 (Hot Water Use—Residential Care and Support Settings).
 - (b) Storage of water at higher temperatures shall be permitted.
- (5) Handwashing stations. Water shall be permitted to be supplied at a constant temperature between 70°F and 80°F using a single-pipe supply.

(6) Water Age

- (a) The use of plumbing fixtures with flow rates lower than legally required (e.g., "low-flow fixtures") shall be prohibited.
- (b) Plumbing fixtures shall be located in such a manner to reduce the distance between fixtures.
- (c) Plumbing fixtures shall be located in such a manner to reduce the distance from the nearest source of hot water (e.g., water heater, recirculated main/branch, heat trace) and the plumbing fixture.

2.1-8.4.2.4 Hemodialysis water distribution

(1) Where a central water system is provided, the following shall be provided:

(a) General

- (i) Separate treated water distribution system
- (ii) Drainage system independent from tap water
- (b) Treated water distribution system. This system shall meet the following requirements:
 - (i) The treated water system shall be in accordance with:
 - ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-2: Water Treatment Equipment for Haemodialysis Applications and Related Therapies
 - ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-3: Water for Haemodialysis and Related Therapies
 - (ii) Treated water distribution outlets shall be provided for these areas:
 - Each individual hemodialysis patient care station
 - Hemodialysis equipment repair area
 - Dialysate preparation area
- (c) Dialysis equipment or water system components shall meet FCA 510 (k) approval and the requirements of Class 2 medical devices.
- (d) The liquid waste and disposal system for the hemodialysis treatment area shall be designed to minimize odor and prevent backflow.
- (e) All hemodialysis distribution piping shall be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance.
- (2) Where a central water system is not provided:
 - (a) There shall be a domestic water supply terminating into a dialysis wall box.
 - (b) A water softener shall be provided where the domestic water supply does not meet water hardness requirements recommended by the manufacturer.
 - (c) The domestic water supply shall be tempered by the use of a mixing valve.
 - (d) There shall be a backflow prevention device that isolates the dialysis treatment area from the remainder of the nursing home.
- (3) Hemodialysis water treatment equipment area. Where a hemodialysis water distribution system is used, the following requirements shall apply:
 - (a) Water treatment purification equipment shall be located in a dedicated area with space to access all components of the equipment.
 - (i) This area shall include a floor drain.
 - (ii) This area shall be located in a secured space or room.
 - (b) All hemodialysis water treatment and purification equipment shall be of materials and construction in accordance with ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-2: Water Treatment Equipment for Haemodialysis Applications and Related Therapies.

(4) Hemodialysis wall boxes. Where provided, hemodialysis wall boxes shall be installed in such a way as to not interfere with flushing, cleaning and disinfection of surfaces, or maintenance of waste drain.

2.1-8.4.2.5 Drainage systems

(1) Piping

- (a) Installation of exposed drainage piping or piping in the ceiling shall be avoided in food preparation centers, food service facilities, food storage areas, equipment and supply storage, telecommunications equipment rooms, electrical rooms or closets, and other sensitive areas.
- (b) Where overhead drainage piping in these areas is unavoidable, provisions shall be made to protect the space below from leakage, condensation, and dust particles.

(2) Kitchen grease traps. Where grease traps are used, they shall be located so they are easily accessible for cleaning.

(3) Sewers. Building sewers shall discharge into community sewerage. Where such a system is not available, the facility shall treat its sewage in accordance with local and state regulations.

2.1-8.4.3 Plumbing Fixtures

2.1-8.4.3.1 General-

(1) The material used for plumbing fixtures shall be nonabsorptive and acid-resistant.

(2) Clearances

- (a) Faucet spouts used in sinks shall have clearances adequate to avoid contaminating utensils and the contents of carafes, etc.
- (b) The faucet shall be located so there is a minimum of 1 inch (2.54 centimeters) between any part of the faucet or handles and the surrounding backsplash.

(3) Faucets

- (a) Faucets shall be equipped with pressure compensating, non-aerated stream shaping devices commonly known as laminar spout-end devices.
- (b) Laminar stream patterns are required.
- (c) Aerated and/or atomized stream patterns are prohibited.

(4) Showerheads

- (a) Showerheads shall be equipped with pressure compensating flow regulators.
- (b) Hoses for handheld shower wands shall have a minimum 0.3-inch (7.62 millimeters) internal diameter.
- (c) A fixed showerhead or a handheld showerhead for each showering location shall be specified.
- (d) The use of multi-head shower installations is prohibited.

(e) Showerheads with the handheld showerhead integrated into the fixed showerhead spray pattern shall be permitted.

(5) Shower and tub/shower valves

(a) Check valves are required on the hot and cold piping feeding each shower and tub/shower valve.

(b) Check valves shall be accessible for repair and replacement.

2.1-8.4.3.2 Handwashing station sink. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements for incorporating a sink into a handwashing station.

(1) Basin design

(a) Sinks used for handwashing shall be designed with basins that reduce splashing.

(b) The nominal open area of the basin shall not be smaller than 1 square foot (.093 square meters), with a minimum centerline dimension of 9 inches (22.86 centimeters) in width or length.

(c) Handwashing sink basins shall be made of vitreous china, porcelain, stainless steel, or solid-surface materials.

(2) Sink basins shall be installed so they fit tightly against the wall or countertop and are sealed to prevent leaks.

(3) Fittings

(a) The water discharge point of a handwashing sink faucet shall be at least 8.5 inches (21.59 centimeters) above the bottom of the basin for resident rooms/bathrooms and 10 inches (25.4 centimeters) above the bottom of the basin for all other locations.

(b) Handwashing stations used by care and nursing staff and food service staff shall have fittings—including single-lever or wrist blade devices—that allow for hands-free operation.

(i) Blade handles used for this purpose shall be at least 4 inches (10.16 centimeters) in length.

(ii) The location and arrangement of fittings shall provide the clearance required for operation of blade-type handles.

(c) Sensor-regulated (electronic) faucets

(i) Sensor-regulated faucets shall meet user need for temperature and for length of time water flows.

(ii) Electronic faucets shall be capable of functioning during loss of normal power.

(iii) Sensor-regulated faucets with manual temperature control shall be permitted.

(d) Anchoring. Handwashing station sinks shall be anchored to withstand up to 250 pounds (1112N) of vertical or horizontal force at any point on the sink.

2.1-8.4.3.3 Showers and tubs

(1) ~~Reserved General. See the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5 for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

- (2) **Accessible Barrier-free** showers. In resident bathrooms, bathrooms in dwelling units, and central bathing rooms with **accessible** showers, the following requirements shall be met:
- (a) A transition between flooring and the shower floor shall meet accessibility standards.
 - (b) The floor shall slope to the drain.
 - (c) Fittings ~~and faucets~~ for showers shall be located within user reach to allow independent bathing as applicable to the level of assistance required by the care population.

2.1-8.4.3.4 ~~Reserved~~ Salon hair-washing sink

- (1) Where a sink is intended to be used for hair washing, the sink controls shall meet accessibility standards.
- (2) The hair-washing sink shall have a hair trap and neck rest.

2.1-8.4.3.5 Clinical sinks. Clinical sinks shall have an integral trap wherein the upper portion of the water trap provides a visible seal.

2.1-8.4.3.6 Portable hydrotherapy whirlpools. A dedicated sink or drain shall be provided for draining portable hydrotherapy whirlpools, or the hydrotherapy fixture shall be drained into a clinical sink or equivalent flushing-rim fixture.

2.1-8.4.4 Oxygen and Vacuum Systems

Where provided, station outlets and inlets shall comply with Table 2.1-1 (Required Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces).

2.1-8.4.4.1 Oxygen systems. The installation, testing, and certification of nonflammable medical gas systems shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.

2.1-8.4.4.2 Vacuum systems. Clinical vacuum system design and installations shall be in accordance with NFPA 99.

2.1-8.5 Communications Systems

2.1-8.5.1 ~~General~~ Reserved

~~**2.1-8.5.1.1 Application.** Requirements for call systems, information systems, and telecommunications systems shall be based on the care population and provided in accordance with requirements in the facility chapters in Parts 3 through 5.~~

2.1-8.5.1.21 Communications systems equipment requirements

- (1) A central location and/or decentralized location for communications systems equipment shall be provided based on the care model.
- (2) Communications systems equipment locations shall be permitted to house both communications systems equipment and electronic safety and security equipment. See Section 2.1-8.6.1.2 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems—Location).
- (3) Equipment terminations
 - (a) Locations for terminating telecommunications and information systems devices shall be provided.

- (b) Where wireless systems are used, terminations for head-end system devices shall also be provided.

2.1-8.5.2 Call System

2.1-8.5.2.1 General

- (1) The signal from any call device shall activate at the staff work area and/or signal a wearable device carried by staff.
- (2) Nurse/staff and emergency call systems shall be listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.
- (3) Use of alternative technologies, including wireless systems, shall be permitted for emergency or nurse/staff call systems.
- (4) Where wireless call systems (900 MHz or Wi-Fi) are used, the following requirements shall be met:
 - (a) Wireless system shall be coordinated with facility Wi-Fi infrastructure to confirm call system infrastructure requirements and coverage.
 - (b) Wireless call systems using batteries for call system devices shall be coordinated with the facility for replacement requirements.
 - (c) Transmitters, receivers, and power supplies shall be coordinated when installing wireless call systems.
 - (d) Internal and external sources shall be electromagnetically compatible.

2.1-8.5.2.2 Resident toilet or bath station. A means to summon staff assistance shall be provided in toilet rooms and bathrooms.

- (1) Where a pull cord is used, it shall be permitted to serve a toilet and a shower/tub where it can be accessed from both locations.
- (2) Where a wearable device is used, it shall be waterproof.
- (3) Call signal. The resident toilet or bath stations shall be designed to meet the following requirements:
 - (a) The call signal for the resident toilet or bath stations shall be distinct from the call signal for the resident/patient room bed station.
 - (b) The resident toilet or bath call signal shall be permitted to be turned off only at the location where it was activated.

2.1-8.5.2.3 Common area call station. Where identified in the safety risk assessment, a call station shall be provided in each dining, recreation, activity area, and hair salon.

2.1-8.5.2.4 Nursing home and hospice facilities call systems

- (1) Call systems shall comply with UL 1069: *Standard for Hospital Signaling and Nurse Call Equipment.*
- (2) Resident/patient bed station
 - (a) Each bed location shall be provided with access to a resident/patient bed station call device. One resident/patient bed station shall be permitted to serve two beds.

(b) A call initiated by a resident/patient activating either a call device attached to a resident's call station or a portable device that sends a call signal shall register at the staff call station or device and shall do one of the following:

(i) A visible signal shall be activated in the corridor at the resident's door. In multi-corridor or cluster resident units, additional visual signals shall be installed at corridor intersections.

(ii) Activate a mobile device carried by a staff member, identifying the specific resident and location from which the call was placed.

(3) Duty station. Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, a notification from a resident room, toilet, or bath call device shall activate a duty station located in a medication room (2.1-2.8.8.2), clean workroom, or clean supply room (2.1-3.8.11).

2.1-8.5.2.5 Assisted living, behavioral and mental health treatment, intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, substance-use disorder treatment facilities call systems

(1) Where call systems are provided, they shall comply with UL Standard 2560: *Emergency Call Systems for Assisted Living and Independent Living Facilities*.

(2) Resident bed call stations

(a) Each bed location shall be provided with access to a resident bed station call device. One resident bed call station shall be permitted to serve two beds.

(b) The resident bed station shall be designed so that when a call is activated, the signal initiated is distinct to that resident bed station device and can be turned off only at the activated device.

2.1-8.5.3 Telecommunications System

2.1-8.5.3.1 Technology equipment room (TER). Where a TER is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) General

(a) The TER shall house the main networking equipment, servers, and data storage devices that serve the building.

(b) Telephone equipment shall be permitted to be included in the main TER.

(c) The TER shall serve as the point where outside carrier data and voice circuits and cable TV services enter the facility and outdoor cabling interfaces with the building's internal cabling infrastructure.

(d) Access to the TER shall be restricted. ~~equipped with a lock to control access to the room.~~

(2) Number. Each residential care or support facility shall have at least one TER.

(3) Size

(a) The TER shall be sized to accommodate the number of racks needed for anticipated servers, networking, and storage.

(b) The TER shall be sized to provide clearances to meet service requirements and NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code* working clearances for the equipment that will be housed there.

(4) Location and access

- (a) The TER shall be located above any floodplains and, in multi-story buildings, below the top level of the facility to deter water damage to the equipment from outside sources (e.g., leaks from the roof or flood damage).
- (b) In areas prone to hurricanes or tornados, the TER shall be located away from exterior curtain walls to prevent wind and water damage.
- (c) The TER shall be located a ~~minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters)~~ safe distance from any transformer, motors, induction heaters, radio and radar systems, and other sources of electromagnetic interference.

(d) Combining the TER and technology room (TR) shall be permitted.

(5) Building system requirements

- (a) Mechanical and electrical equipment or fixtures that are not directly related to the support of the TER shall not be installed in, pass through, or enter the room.
- (b) All computer and networking equipment shall be served by uninterruptible power supply.
- (c) All circuits serving the equipment in the TER shall be dedicated to serving the technology equipment room only.
- (d) Cooling and heating shall be provided for the TER.
 - (i) Cooling systems serving the TER shall be supplied by the essential electrical system.
 - (ii) Temperature control systems in the TER shall be designed to maintain environmental conditions recommended in ASHRAE's *Thermal Guidelines for Data Processing Environments* or the requirements for the specific equipment installed.

2.1-8.5.3.2 Technology ~~distribution~~ room (TDR). Where a TDR is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) Number

- (a) A minimum of one TDR shall be provided.
- (b) TRs shall be provided throughout the facility as necessary to meet the 295-foot (90 meters) maximum cable distance required for Ethernet cables from the termination point in the TR to each wall outlet.
- (c) The TDR shall be permitted to be combined with a TER.

(2) Location and access

- (a) Location. The TDR shall be ~~located in an unrestricted area and~~ directly accessible from a corridor.
- (b) Access to the TDR shall be restricted.

(c) Suspended ceiling shall not be permitted in the TR.

(3) Size. The TR shall be sized to provide space for the equipment needed to meet service requirements.

(43) Building system requirements

- (a) Mechanical and electrical equipment, utilities, and fixtures not directly related to the support of the TDR shall be permitted to pass through the room.
- (b) All circuits serving the TDR and equipment in the TDR shall be dedicated to serving the TDR.
- (c) Electrical power for cooling systems serving the TDR shall be supplied by the essential electrical system.

2.1-8.5.4 Grounding for Telecommunications Spaces

2.1-8.5.4.1 Grounding and bonding shall meet the requirements [in the governing edition](#) of NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code* and TIA 607: *Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises*.

2.1-8.5.4.2 Telecommunications grounding busbar (TGB)

- ~~(1) The TGB shall be drilled with holes according to National Electrical Manufacturing Association standards to accommodate bolted compression fittings.~~
- ~~(2) All racks, cabinets, sections of cable tray, and metal components of the technology system that do not carry electrical current shall be grounded to this busbar.~~
- ~~(3) TGBs shall be connected by a backbone of insulated, #6 (minimum) to 3/0 AWG stranded copper cable between all technology rooms.~~

2.1-8.5.4.3 Telecommunications main grounding busbar (TMGB)

- ~~(1) TMGBs shall be connected back to the TMGB in the telecommunications service entrance room. The main grounding bar shall then be connected back to the building main electrical service ground.~~
- ~~(2) The TMGB shall not be bonded to anything other than the building's main electrical service ground.~~
- ~~(3) Bonding conduction cabling shall be colored green and labeled appropriately.~~

2.1-8.5.5 Cabling Pathways and Raceway Requirements

~~Pathways and raceways distributing cabling between telecommunications rooms shall be enclosed in conduit for protection from damage.~~

2.1-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems**2.1-8.6.1 General****2.1-8.6.1.1 Application**

- (1) Evaluation of the type of safety and security systems shall be completed and implemented based on the care population being served and the demographics of the project location.
- (2) See Section 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for information on using the safety risk assessment to identify locations where access control is needed.
- (3) Access control technology shall be used to help provide a safe environment for residents, visitors, and staff.

2.1-8.6.1.2 Location. Where electronic safety and security systems are provided, the following requirements shall be met:

- (1) A central location for safety and security equipment shall be provided.
- (2) Safety and security equipment shall be permitted to be located with teledata communications equipment.
- (3) Locations for terminating safety and security system devices shall be provided.
- (4) Electronic security system monitors shall be located to protect resident privacy.

2.1-8.6.2 Fire Alarm System

Residential care and support facilities shall be provided with fire detection and protection systems in accordance with federal, state, and local codes. ~~Fire alarm and detection systems shall be provided in compliance with NFPA 101: Life Safety Code and NFPA 72: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.~~

2.1-8.6.3 Security Systems

Where electronic security systems are provided, devices that are visible and accessible by behavioral and mental health care populations shall be tamper-resistant.

2.1-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

2.1-8.7.1 General

2.1-8.7.1.1 Application. Parking lots, approaches to buildings, and all occupied spaces in buildings shall be wired and provided with lighting equipment.

2.1-8.7.1.2 Lighting design

- (1) Lighting shall be designed to meet the needs of occupants in specific spaces. See Section 1.2-6.2.2 (Lighting Planning Process) for requirements.
- (2) Lighting levels
 - (a) Lighting shall comply with Table 1 in ANSI/IES RP-28: *Lighting and the Visual Environment for Older Adults and the Visually Impaired*.
 - (b) Residential facilities that focus on health care applications shall meet the requirements in Table 2 of ANSI/IES RP-29: *Lighting Hospitals and Healthcare Facilities*.
 - (c) Means shall be provided for controlling light levels to suit space use and availability of daylight.
- (3) Glare.
 - (a) Direct and reflected glare shall be minimized. ~~In areas with a high percentage of daylight, architectural surfaces should have a matte finish, low specular values, and low light reflectance values (LRV) to prevent reflected glare.~~
 - (b) Artificial light sources shall be shielded or not directly viewable.
- (4) Lighting system. The lighting system (luminaires and controls) shall be designed to operate within an acceptable level of photometric flicker in accordance with IEEE 1789: *Recommended Practices for*

Modulating Current in High-Brightness LEDs for Mitigating Health Risks to Viewers.

2.1-8.7.2 Daylighting Systems in Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas

2.1-8.7.2.1 Dining, recreation/lounge, and activity areas for daytime use shall have glazing for daylight and views to the outdoors.

2.1-8.7.2.2 ~~Translucent shades, sheers, blinds, or a combination of~~ Window treatments shall be provided to control exterior light, diffuse glare, and provide resident privacy.

2.1-8.7.3 Artificial Lighting Systems

2.1-8.7.3.1 Light fixtures

(1) Luminaires. Luminaires shall have smooth, cleanable enclosures that conceal the light source.

(a) Luminaire surfaces. Touchable luminaire surfaces shall be selected to protect occupants from burns and prevent materials from igniting.

(b) Luminaire location. Where light sources that produce heat will be used, they shall be located to avoid potential injury.

(2) Light fixtures in wet areas (e.g., kitchens, showers). These fixtures shall:

(a) Be vapor-resistant.

(b) Have cleanable, shatter-resistant lenses.

(c) Not have exposed lamps. Ceiling-mounted, intermittently operated, and exposed heating lamps in locations not subject to water splash shall be permitted.

2.1-8.7.3.2 Lighting requirements for specific locations. Central control of night-lighting in corridors shall be permitted.

2.1-8.8 Elevator Systems

2.1-8.8.1 General

2.1-8.8.1.1 Application

(1) Buildings having resident/participant-use areas on more than one floor shall have elevator(s).

(2) Where the facility is part of a general hospital and/or a long-term care facility, elevators shall be permitted to be shared.

2.1-8.8.1.2 Number

The following minimum requirements shall apply unless otherwise demonstrated by an engineered traffic study:

(1) A minimum of two elevators shall be installed where 60 to 200 residents are living or receiving health, care, or support services on floors other than the main entrance floor.

(2) A minimum of three elevators shall be installed where 201 to 350 residents are living or receiving health, care, or support services on floors other than the main entrance floor.

(3) For facilities with more than 350 residents living or receiving health, care, or support services above the main entrance floor, the number of elevators shall be determined from a study of the facility plan and from the estimated vertical transportation requirements.

2.1-8.8.2 Dimensions and Clearances

2.1-8.8.2.1 Where elevator(s) are provided in nursing homes and hospice care facilities, ~~it shall meet the size requirements and clearances as below.~~ (i) ~~At least~~ a minimum of one elevator sized at 7 feet 4 inches (2.24 meters) by five feet five inches (1.64 meters) shall be provided where residents are living or receiving care or support services on any floor other than the main entrance floor.

2.1-8.8.2.2 Where elevator(s) are provided in long-term care facilities (i.e., assisted living, behavioral and mental health, substance use disorder treatment facilities, and settings for intellectual and/or developmental disabilities) and in licensed facilities with limited hours of services (adult day/health care, wellness center, and outpatient rehabilitation facilities), a minimum of one ~~shall meet the size requirements and clearances as below.~~ (i) ~~At least One~~ elevator sized to accommodate a gurney size of 24 inches (60.96 centimeters) by 84 inches (2.13 meters) fully extended and level with not less than 5-inch (12.7 centimeters) radius corners shall be provided.

2.1-8.8.2.3 Elevator car door(s) shall have a minimum clear door opening of 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters).

2.1-8.8.3 Leveling Device

Elevators shall be equipped with an automatic two-way leveling device with an accuracy of $\pm 1/4$ inch (± 6.35 millimeters).

2.1-8.8.4 Installation and Testing Standards

Installation and testing of elevators shall comply with the adopted standards, ~~following:~~

2.1-8.8.5 Handrails

2.1-8.8.5.1 Elevator cars shall have handrails on all sides without entrance doors.

~~2.1-8.8.5.2 The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.10, list numbers (1) and (5) through (9) shall apply.~~

Table 2.1-1: Required Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces

<u>Section</u>		<u>Location</u>	<u>Electrical Receptacles</u>		<u>Oxygen and Vacuum Outlet/Inlet Quantity</u>		<u>Nurse Call Device Locations⁹</u>		
			<u>Minimum Number of Single Receptacles^{1,2}</u>	<u>Receptacle Locations^{3,4}</u>	<u>Oxygen</u>	<u>Vacuum</u>	<u>Resident Bed Station</u>	<u>Toilet Call Station¹⁰</u>	<u>Bath Call Station</u>
<u>Common Elements</u>	<u>2.1-2.2.2</u>	<u>Resident room⁵</u>	<u>8</u>	<u>Minimum of 1 receptacle on each wall</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>
	<u>2.1-2.2.5.1</u>	<u>Airborne infection isolation (AII) room</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>1 duplex at each side of the resident bed</u> <u>2 receptacles on each remaining wall</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>
	<u>2.1-2.8.9</u>	<u>Central bathing room</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>
	<u>2.1-3.2</u>	<u>Exam room</u>	<u>8</u>	<u>1 duplex at each side of head of exam table or bed</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>
	<u>2.1-8.3.4</u>	<u>Ventilator-dependent resident rooms and areas</u>	<u>14</u>	<u>1 duplex at each side of the resident bed</u> <u>Minimum of 2 receptacles on each remaining wall</u> <u>Ventilator: 1 duplex on each side of the bed on a dedicated essential circuit</u>	<u>1^{6, 7, 8}</u>	<u>1^{6, 7}</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>
<u>Resident Rooms in Facility Chapters</u>	<u>3.1-2.2.2</u> <u>3.2-2.2.2</u> <u>4.1-2.2.2</u> <u>4.3-2.2.2</u> <u>4.4-2.2.2</u> <u>4.5-2.2.2</u>	<u>Resident room⁵</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>1 duplex at each side of the resident bed</u> <u>2 receptacles on each remaining wall</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>•</u>
	<u>3.1-3.7.10.2</u>	<u>Patient toilet room serving the hemodialysis area</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>=</u>	<u>•</u>	<u>=</u>

Section	Location	Electrical Receptacles		Oxygen and Vacuum Outlet/Inlet Quantity		Nurse Call Device Locations ⁹			
		Minimum Number of Single Receptacles ^{1,2}	Receptacle Locations ^{3,4}	Oxygen	Vacuum	Resident Bed Station	Toilet Call Station ¹⁰	Bath Call Station	
	3.1-3.7.14.3	Hemodialysis patient care stations	4 (2 additional for ventilator)	2 duplex each on a dedicated 20 amp circuits on emergency power per station for use only by hemodialysis equipment 1 duplex at each dialysis station for general use	=	=	=	=	=
	3.1-3.7.14.3	Hemodialysis equipment repair room	2 for each equipment repair station	2 receptacles each on dedicated 20 amp circuits for each dialysis equipment repair station in the equipment repair room	=	=	=	=	=

¹Receptacle quantities reflect the total number of receptacles from normal power, emergency power, or any combination thereof. Each room on this table shall meet the requirements for connection to the essential electrical system in the governing edition of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*. See Section 2.1-8.3.3.1 (Essential electrical system or emergency electrical power) to determine if an essential electrical system or emergency electrical power is required. Branch circuits serving only special purpose receptacles shall be permitted to be served by other panelboards.

²Permanently installed single, duplex, or fourplex receptacles or a combination of these shall be permitted. Receptacles in relocatable power taps or mounted on portable equipment shall not be counted as part of the total minimum requirement. Where a room is equipped for a television, one additional receptacle is required. Where an electric bed will be used, one additional receptacle is required.

³Cords from the equipment to be used in the room shall be able to reach receptacles without causing a trip hazard.

⁴The number of receptacles for these spaces is intended to be not less than the number required in the governing edition of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*. Where an in-room sink is provided, an additional GFCI duplex shall be provided.

⁵Omission of receptacles from exterior walls in patient rooms shall be permitted where construction or room configuration makes installation impractical.

⁶Use of portable equipment in lieu of a piped gas system shall be permitted.

⁷Portable vacuum equipment shall be readily accessible.

⁸NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code* permits the use of portable medical compressed air for single applications. Where cylinders are used for non-respiratory purposes, such as air for blowing down scopes and/or running decontamination equipment, NFPA 99 should be consulted for cylinder air quality, placement, and handling. The provision of medical gases shall also comply with NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*. The clinical risk assessment in NFPA 99 may result in more stringent requirements for locations where this table permits use of portable gases.

⁹It is recognized that staff other than nurses may respond to these devices; the term “nurse call” is used here as it is an industry-accepted term.

¹⁰A visible signal shall be activated in the corridor at the resident’s door. In multi-corridor or cluster resident units, additional visual signals shall be installed at corridor intersections.

3.1 Specific Requirements for Nursing Homes

3.1-1 General

3.1-1.1 Application

3.1-1.1.1 General

This chapter shall apply to nursing homes, whether freestanding or part of another facility.

3.1-1.1.1.1 Nursing homes shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

3.1-1.1.1.2 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to nursing homes when cross-referenced in this chapter.

3.1-1.1.2 Design Criteria

3.1-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved~~ ~~Sustainable design.~~ See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.

3.1-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral or mental health issues~~, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

3.1-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

3.1-1.1.2.4 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care. If the care population will include individuals receiving palliative care, see Section 2.1-2.1.2.4 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care) for requirements.

3.1-1.2 Functional Program

3.1-1.2.1 General

See A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program) ~~for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

3.1-1.2.2 Nursing Home Care Models

~~The care model for the nursing home shall be determined during functional programming and shall be permitted to be one of the following:~~

3.1-1.2.2.1 Traditional model

~~3.1-1.2.2.2 Cluster and/or neighborhood model~~

~~3.1-1.2.2.3 Connected household and freestanding household models. Households shall be permitted to share support spaces and services.~~

3.1-1.3 Site

3.1-1.3.1 – 3.1-1.3.3 Reserved

3.1-1.3.4 Parking

3.1-1.3.4.1 Parking for nursing homes shall meet the requirements in Section 1.3-3.3 (Parking) as amended in this section.

3.1-1.3.4.2 A minimum of one parking space shall be provided for every four beds.

3.1-1.4 Reserved ~~Safety Risk Assessment~~

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

3.1-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

3.1-1.5.1 General

The requirements in sections 1.2-1.3 (Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

3.1-1.5.2 Flexibility

Nursing homes shall be designed to provide flexibility to meet the changing physical, medical, and psychological needs of residents.

3.1-1.5.3 Supportive Environment

The requirements in sections 1.2-5.1.3 (Planning Considerations for Resident Quality of Life) and 1.2-6.7 (Planning Considerations for Inclusive Environments) shall apply.

3.1-1.5.4 Barrier-Free Environment

Nursing homes shall comply with the requirements in Section 1.2-6.7.3 (Barrier-Free Design). ~~The architectural design — through the organization of functional space, the specification of ergonomically appropriate and arranged furniture and equipment, and selection of details and finishes — shall eliminate as many barriers as possible to access and use by residents of all space, services, equipment, and utilities appropriate for daily living.~~

3.1-2 Resident Areas

3.1-2.1 General

Resident areas in a nursing home shall comply with the requirements in this section.

3.1-2.1.1 New Construction

Resident areas in nursing homes shall meet minimum design requirements described in this section.

3.1-2.1.2 Renovation

3.1-2.1.2.1 For renovation of resident rooms in existing nursing homes, see Section 3.1-2.2.3 (Resident Room Requirements for Renovation).

3.1-2.1.2.2 See Section 1.1-3 (Renovation) for additional guidance.

3.1-2.2 Resident Unit

The resident unit shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2 (Resident Unit or Resident Living Areas) amended in this section.

3.1-2.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.1 (Resident Unit or Resident Living Area—General) shall apply as amended in this section.

3.1-2.2.1.1 Resident unit size. See Section 3.1-2.2.1.2 (Resident unit layout) and [Table 1.2-2 \(Setting Type Characteristics\)](#) for information on the relationship between resident unit size and care models.

3.1-2.2.1.2 Resident unit layout

- (1) Resident units shall be designed to avoid unrelated travel through the units.
- (2) The facility layout shall be designed to reflect the care model selected during functional programming.

~~**3.1-2.2.1.3 Resident telephone access.** See Section 2.1-2.2.1.4 (Resident telephone access) for requirements.~~

3.1-2.2.2 Resident Room Requirements for New Construction

For new construction, each resident room shall meet the requirements in this section.

3.1-2.2.2.1 Capacity. Maximum room capacity shall be two residents [as required in this section](#).

(1) Single-resident room. A minimum of 80 percent of residents shall be housed in single-resident rooms unless the necessity for a double-resident room has been demonstrated. A smaller percentage of single-resident rooms shall be permitted when approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

(2) Double-resident room. A maximum of 20 percent of residents shall be permitted to reside in double-resident rooms (companion rooms).

3.1-2.2.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Area

(a) Single-resident room. Where a single-resident room is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

- (i) Minimum clear floor area of 121 square feet (11.24 square meters)
- (ii) Minimum clear dimension of 11 feet (3.35 meters)

- (b) ~~Multiple~~Double-resident room. Where a ~~multiple~~double-resident room is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:
- (i) Minimum clear floor area of 108 square feet (10.03 square meters) per resident bed
 - (ii) Minimum clear dimension of 9 feet 6 inches (2.90 meters) for the clear floor area for each resident
 - (iii) Direct access shall be provided from the room entry to the resident bed, toilet room, closet or wardrobe, and window without traveling through the clear floor area of another resident.
- (2) Clearances. ~~Clearances that accommodate resident mobility and transfer~~
- (a) The clearances in Section 2.1-2.2.2.2 (2) (Resident room: Space requirements—Clearances) shall be provided as amended in this section.
 - (b) A minimum clearance of 48 inches (1.22 meters) between the bed and any wall or other fixed obstruction on the transfer side of the bed shall be provided.
- (3) Resident room accommodations
- (a) Each resident room shall be sized to accommodate the following items, which shall be accessible from a wheelchair or other resident-operated mobility device.
 - (i) Bed. Use of a recliner in lieu of a bed shall be permitted based on resident preference.
 - (ii) Resident chair or recliner. Location of the resident chair or recliner adjacent to the head of the bed shall be permitted.
 - (iii) Closet or wardrobe. Each resident shall be provided with an individual wardrobe or closet.
 - Where a movable wardrobe is provided, it shall be permitted to be located adjacent to the head of the bed.
 - This closet or wardrobe shall have a minimum dimension that allows for a standard clothes hanger and a linear hanging space of 2 feet 6 inches (76.2 centimeters).
 - A clothes rod shall be provided that can be adjusted to a height accessible to the resident. Accommodations shall be made for storage of full-length garments.
 - A shelf shall be provided that can be adjusted to a height accessible to the resident. Omission of the shelf shall be permitted where the unit provides at least two accessible drawers.
 - (iv) Dresser. The dresser shall be permitted to be located:
 - In or as part of a wardrobe or closet.
 - On the wall adjacent to the head of the bed.
 - (v) Nightstand. The nightstand shall be permitted to be located adjacent to the head of the bed.
 - (vi) Space for a side chair
 - (b) The resident room or apartment shall be equipped to accommodate a television.

(c) The room shall be configured to provide each resident with a view of the television from the resident chair or recliner.

~~(e) Direct access shall be provided from the room entry to the resident bed, toilet room, closet or wardrobe, and window without traveling through the clear floor area of another resident.~~

3.1-2.2.2.3 Window. Window(s) shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows).

3.1-2.2.2.4 Resident privacy

- (1) Visual privacy shall be provided for each resident in multiple-resident rooms.
- (2) Design for privacy shall not restrict resident access to the toilet, room entrance, window, or other shared common areas in the resident room.

3.1-2.2.2.5 Reserved

3.1-2.2.2.6 Resident toilet room. Each resident room shall have direct access to a toilet room.

- (1) One toilet room shall serve no more than two residents in a resident room.
- (2) Space requirements
 - (a) Toilet rooms shall be sized and configured to accommodate:
 - ~~(i) Staff assistance, including use of lifting equipment.~~
 - ~~(ii) Accessibility standards that support independent resident use~~
 - ~~(b) Clearance shall be provided on both sides of the toilet to enable physical access and maneuvering by staff members assisting the resident with wheelchair-to-toilet transfers and returns.~~
 - (b) Where the exception for assisted toileting is allowed by accessibility standards, clearance shall be provided on both sides of the toilet to enable physical access and maneuvering by staff members assisting the resident with wheelchair-to-toilet transfer and returns.
- (3) The toilet room shall contain the following:
 - (a) Toilet
 - (b) Handwashing station meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).
 - (c) Individual storage for the personal effects of each resident
- (4) Door and door hardware shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (Doors and door hardware).
- (5) Grab bars
 - (a) Grab bars shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.9 (Grab bars).
 - (b) Where residents are capable of independent transfers, alternative grab bar configurations shall be permitted.

3.1-2.2.2.7 Resident bathroom. Where a bathtub or shower is provided in a resident toilet room, the following requirements shall be met in addition to the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.2.6 (Resident toilet room):

- (1) Space shall be provided for drying, dressing, and grooming.
- (2) A counter and a shelf or cabinet for personal item storage meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Furnishings—Casework, millwork, and built-ins) shall be provided.
- (3) See Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—[Barrier-free Accessible](#) showers) for shower requirements.

3.1-2.2.3 Resident Room Requirements for Renovation

For renovations, resident rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.2 (Resident Room Requirements for New Construction) as amended in this section.

3.1-2.2.3.1 Capacity. ~~Multiple resident rooms shall be permitted to have a maximum capacity of four residents.~~

- [\(1\) The maximum room capacity shall be two residents.](#)
- [\(2\) Where renovation work conforms to those items described in Section 1.1-3.1.2.2 \(The following exceptions...\) and the present capacity is more than two residents in each room, maximum room capacity shall be no more than the present capacity, with a maximum of four residents.](#)

3.1-2.2.3.2 Space requirements

- (1) – (2) Reserved
- (3) Resident room accommodations. Each resident room shall be sized to accommodate the following items:
 - (a) Bed
 - (b) Resident recliner. A recliner shall be permitted in lieu of a bed based upon resident needs and preferences.
 - (c) Dresser or drawers within a wardrobe or fixed closet
 - (d) Nightstand

3.1-2.2.3.3 Window. Windows shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows).

3.1-2.2.3.4 Resident privacy. Provisions for resident privacy shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.2.4 (1) (Visual privacy shall be provided...).

3.1-2.2.3.5 Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in each resident room.

- (1) Omission of this station shall be permitted where a handwashing station is located in a directly accessible toilet room that serves that room only.
- (2) The following design requirements shall apply:

- (a) For handwashing station design details, see Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).
- (b) For sink design, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.2 (Plumbing Fixtures—Handwashing station sink).
- (c) For casework details, see Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Furnishings—Casework, millwork, and built-ins).

3.1-2.2.3.6 Resident toilet room

- (1) The resident toilet room(s) shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.2.6 (Resident toilet room), except Section 3.1-2.2.2.6 (1) and 3.1-2.2.2.6 (3)(c).
- (2) One toilet room shall serve no more than ~~two~~ **four** residents in a multiple-resident room.
- (3) Accommodation for individual storage for the personal effects of each resident shall be provided immediately accessible to the resident toilet room.

3.1-2.2.3.7 Resident bathroom. Where a shower is provided in a resident toilet room, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—~~Barrier-free~~ **Accessible** showers).

3.1-2.2.4 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

If the care population includes individuals of size, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply.

Resident Room for Individuals of Size

~~Where a resident room designed to accommodate individuals of size is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.2 (Resident Room Requirements for New Construction) as amended in this section.~~

3.1-2.2.4.1 General

- ~~(1) The need for, number, and type of resident rooms accommodating individuals of size shall be determined during functional programming.~~
- ~~(2) Where the facility provides resident rooms for individuals of size, see sections 1.2-6.5 (Planning Considerations for Accommodation of Individuals of Size) and 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals of size) for additional requirements.~~

3.1-2.2.4.2 Space requirements

~~(1) Area~~

- ~~(a) Where a single resident room for individuals of size with a fixed overhead lift is provided, it shall have the following:~~
 - ~~(i) Minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet (18.58 square meters)~~
 - ~~(ii) Minimum clear dimension of 13 feet 2 inches (4.01 meters) for the clear floor area~~
- ~~(b) Where a multiple resident room with a fixed overhead lift is provided, it shall have the following:~~
 - ~~(i) Minimum clear floor area of 197 square feet (18.30 square meters) per resident~~

- ~~(ii) Minimum clear dimension of 13 feet 2 inches (4.01 meters) for the clear floor area for each resident~~
- ~~(c) Where a single resident room for individuals of size without an overhead lift is provided but mobile lifts will be used, the room shall have the following:~~
 - ~~(i) Minimum clear floor area of 219 square feet (20.35 square meters)~~
 - ~~(ii) Minimum clear dimension of 13 feet 2 inches (4.01 meters) for the clear floor area~~
- ~~(d) Where a multiple resident room without an overhead lift is provided but mobile lifts will be used, the room shall have the following:~~
 - ~~(i) Minimum clear floor area of 216 square feet (20.07 square meters) per resident~~
 - ~~(ii) Minimum clear dimension of 13 feet 2 inches (4.01 meters) for the clear floor area for each resident~~
- ~~(2) Clearances. Clearances shall accommodate resident mobility and transfer equipment for individuals of size.~~

3.1-2.2.5 Special Care Resident Rooms

Where the following types of rooms are provided, the requirements in this section shall apply.

3.1-2.2.5.1 Airborne infection isolation (AII) room. Where the need for an AII room is identified by the ICRA, an AII room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.5.1 (Airborne infection isolation room) shall be provided.

3.1-2.2.5.2 Ventilator-dependent resident rooms. Where rooms dedicated to serving residents dependent on a ventilator are provided, they shall meet the following requirements in addition to those in Section 3.1-2.2.2 (Resident Room Requirements for New Construction).

- (1) Resident rooms for ventilator-dependent residents shall provide:
 - (a) Space for the ventilator unit at the bedside
 - (b) Additional clearances for resident-operated mobility devices that may be oversized to accommodate a ventilator
 - (c) Provisions for oxygen and vacuum. Any installation of nonflammable medical gas, air, or clinical vacuum systems shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.
 - (d) Backup electrical requirements. See Section 2.1-8.3.5 (Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas).
 - [\(e\) The requirements in Table 2.1-1 \(Required Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces\) shall apply.](#)
- (2) Support areas
 - (a) Where a ventilator-dependent resident unit is provided, support areas shall be provided in the unit to accommodate staffing associated with ventilator services.
 - (b) Equipment space. A dedicated space shall be provided for one of the following:

- (i) Service and maintenance of ventilator equipment
- (ii) Storage for backup or exchange ventilators
- (c) All resident activity and support areas shall be provided with essential power receptacles to support continued ventilator support in the event of a power outage. See Section 2.1-8.3.5 (Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas) for additional requirements.

3.1-2.2.5.3 Resident rooms accommodating peritoneal dialysis. Where residents self-perform or receive peritoneal dialysis, the requirements in Section (2.1-2.2.5.3 Peritoneal dialysis resident rooms) shall apply.

3.1-2.2.5.43 Quiet room. Where a quiet room is provided, see Section 2.1-2.2.5.43 (Quiet room) for requirements.

3.1-2.2.6 Other Special Care Facilities

3.1-2.2.6.1 Subacute care facilities. Where subacute care programs are offered, the design of such units/facilities shall focus on the following major components:

(1) The unit/facility shall comply with applicable nursing home requirements in Chapter 3.1 (Specific Requirements for Nursing Homes) to the extent that these do not conflict with the program.

(2) Using other rooms when not in use for other shared services shall be permitted.

(3) The requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2.3 (4)(c)(iv) (Outpatient therapy dining) shall apply for subacute dining accommodations.

3.1-2.2.6.21 Pediatric facilities

- (1) Pediatric resident rooms. Pediatric resident rooms shall be designed to accommodate the age-related characteristics of the pediatric population identified during functional programming.
 - (a) Location. Unless otherwise stated in the functional program, pediatric resident rooms shall be located separate from units serving adult populations.
 - (b) Capacity
 - (i) Maximum room capacity shall be two pediatric residents.
 - (ii) The pediatric resident room shall be permitted to accommodate more than two pediatric residents where sleeping accommodations are in cribs.
 - (c) Space requirements. The area and clearances of each pediatric resident space shall be based on provision of the following:
 - (i) The ability to accommodate crib or bed locations, including one where staff members have access to the crib or bed on three sides
 - (ii) Clear access to one side of the crib or bed along 75 percent of its length
 - (iii) Space for placement of a stretcher along one side for lateral transfer of the pediatric resident from crib or bed by at least two staff members without substantial rearrangement of furniture

- (iv) In pediatric multiple-resident rooms, clearance permitting movement of cribs or beds and equipment without disturbing other crib or bed locations
 - (v) Space for mechanical and fixed equipment that prevents obstructed access to any required element
 - (vi) Privacy accommodations for family members and each pediatric resident
 - (vii) Overnight accommodations for family members
 - (viii) Space to accommodate enhanced (i.e., additional) staffing, closer observation, and equipment as identified by the functional program
- (d) Handwashing station. At least one handwashing station shall be provided for each four or fewer pediatric residents accommodated in a single room.
- (2) Pediatric resident support areas. Indoor and outdoor activity space shall be designed with consideration of pediatric resident and family culture, age cohorts, and age-appropriate activities and needs.

3.1-2.2.6.32 Post-acute care facilities. The following sections and requirements shall apply to post-acute facilities.

- (1) For resident unit size and layout requirements, see Section 3.1-2.2.1.2 (Resident Unit—Layout).
- (2) For additional post-acute care resident room requirements, see Section 3.1-2.2.2 (Resident Room Requirements for New Construction).
- (3) Where resident community areas are provided, see Section 3.1-4 (Resident Support Facilities) for requirements.
- (4) Where diagnostic and treatment areas are provided, see Section 3.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas) for requirements.
 - (a) See sections 3.1-3.5.2 (Physical Therapy Areas) and 3.1-3.5.3 (Occupational Therapy Facilities) for designated rehabilitation requirements.
 - (b) See 3.1-3.5.4 (Other Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities) for additional requirements based on the types of therapy being provided.
- (5) See Section 3.1-2.2.8 (Support Areas for the Resident Unit) for requirements.
- (6) See Section 3.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) for additional requirements.
- (7) See Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) for requirements.

3.1-2.2.7 Reserved

3.1-2.2.8 Support Areas for the Resident Unit

3.1-2.2.8.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.8.1 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

3.1-2.2.8.2 Staff work area. See Section 2.1-2.8.2 (Staff Work Area) for additional requirements.

- (1) Nurse station for centralized staffing. Where caregiving is organized on a centralized staffing model, staff work areas shall provide for charting or transmitting charted data and any storage for administrative activities.
- (2) Nurse station for decentralized staffing. Where caregiving is decentralized, supervisory work areas need not accommodate charting activities or allow a direct view of resident rooms. Rather, decentralized direct care staff work areas shall be used for charting or transmitting charted data and any storage for administrative activities.

3.1-2.2.8.3 – 3.1-2.2.8.7 Reserved

3.1-2.2.8.8 Medication distribution and storage locations. See Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations) for requirements.

3.1-2.2.8.9 Central bathing room

- (1) General. See Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—[Barrier-free Accessible](#) showers) for requirements.
- (2) Number
 - (a) Where a shower is not provided in the resident bathroom, a minimum of one central bathing room shall be provided per floor or unit that is sized to permit assisted bathing in a tub or shower.
 - (b) A minimum of one bathtub or shower shall be provided for every 20 residents (or major fraction thereof) not otherwise served by bathing facilities in resident bathrooms.
 - (c) [Each tub and shower shall be in an individual room that provides space for the private use of the bathing fixture, drying and dressing, and for a wheelchair and an attendant.](#)

3.1-2.2.8.10 Personal services (hair salon/spa) areas

- (1) Hair salon/spa
 - (a) Facilities and equipment for resident hair care and grooming shall be provided.
 - (b) Mechanical ventilation and exhaust shall be provided for hair salons. See Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support—Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for minimum filter efficiencies and other requirements.
- (2) Other personal services areas. Personal services areas shall be permitted to be unisex and located adjacent to central resident activity areas.
- (3) Toilet facilities shall be located adjacent or directly accessible to the hair salon and grooming area.

3.1-2.2.8.11 Clean workroom ~~and~~ clean supply room.

- (1) A clean workroom that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom ~~and~~ Clean Supply Room) shall be provided.
- (2) [Where a clean supply room is provided, it shall meet the requirements of Section 2.1-4.5 \(Clean Workroom and Clean Supply Room\).](#)

3.1-2.2.8.12 Soiled ~~workroom or soiled~~ holding room. A ~~soiled workroom or~~ soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-~~4.4 3.8.12~~ (Soiled Workroom ~~and or~~ Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided.

3.1-2.2.8.13 Equipment and supply storage

- (1) The requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage) apply in addition to those in this section.
- (2) Storage for mobility devices and support equipment. Storage for resident-operated mobility devices and personal support equipment shall be located so this equipment is accessible to residents at all times without entering another resident's living space.

3.1-2.2.8.14 Reserved

3.1-2.2.8.15 Personal laundry facilities. Personal laundry facilities shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities).

[3.1-2.2.8.16 Environmental services.](#) [Environmental services shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.14 \(Environmental Services Room\).](#)

3.1-2.2.9 Support Areas for Staff

Support areas for staff shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff).

3.1-2.2.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors

3.1-2.2.10.1 – [3.1-2.2.10.2](#) Reserved

~~**3.1-2.2.10.2 Overnight guest accommodations.** See Section 2.1-2.10.2 (Overnight Guest Accommodations) for requirements.~~

3.1-2.2.10.3 Pet accommodations. See Section 2.1-2.10.3 (Pet Accommodations) for requirements.

3.1-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

3.1-2.3.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) shall apply.

3.1-2.3.2 Dining [Areas](#) ~~Facilities~~

Dining areas shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2 (Dining [Areas](#) ~~Facilities~~).

3.1-2.3.3 Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas

Recreation, lounge, and activity areas shall [be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.3 \(Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas\).](#) ~~provide the following:~~

~~**3.1-2.3.3.1 Space to support resident activities and associated equipment identified during the planning phase**~~

~~**3.1-2.3.3.2 Areas sufficient in number and size to:**~~

~~(1) Allow resident groups of various sizes to gather~~

~~(2) Accommodate separate and distinct activities~~

3.1-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

3.1-2.3.4.1 Outdoor activity areas shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas). ~~The nursing home shall provide direct access to outdoor activity areas consistent with the geographic location and designed to promote and encourage residents to spend time in a safe outdoor setting.~~

(1) Visual observation of outdoor activity areas from indoors shall be provided for staff and residents.

(2) Visual observation by staff using video equipment shall be permitted.

~~3.1-2.3.4.2 See Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas) for additional requirements and information.~~

3.1-2.3.5 – 3.1-2.3.7 Reserved

3.1-2.3.8 Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

Toilet facilities that accommodate resident-operated mobility devices shall be readily accessible to all dining, recreation, and activity locations.

3.1-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

3.1-3.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-3.1 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas—General) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

3.1-3.2 Exam/Treatment Room

3.1-3.2.1 ~~Where a~~ An exam/treatment room shall be ~~is~~ provided, ~~it shall~~ meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2 (Exam/Treatment Room).

3.1-3.2.2 Where all resident rooms are single-resident rooms or shared resident rooms that provide visual and auditory privacy for each resident, the omission of the exam room shall be permitted.

3.1-3.3 Accommodations for Telemedicine Services

Where telemedicine services are provided, see Section 2.1-3.3 (Common Elements—Accommodations for Telemedicine Services) for requirements.

3.1-3.4 Reserved

3.1-3.5 Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

3.1-3.5.1 General

3.1-3.5.1.1 Application. Space and equipment shall be provided for the therapy services to be offered in the facility.

- (1) Where two or more rehabilitation services will be provided, sharing of facilities and equipment shall be permitted.
- (2) Where a nursing home is part of a general hospital or other facility, rehabilitation services shall be permitted to be shared.
- (3) Where outpatient therapy services will be provided at the nursing home, see Chapter 5.3 (Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities) for additional requirements.

3.1-3.5.1.2 Location. Rehabilitation therapy facilities shall be **easily readily** accessible or in the same building for the residents served.

3.1-3.5.2 Physical Therapy Areas

3.1-3.5.2.1 General. A private therapy room shall be provided where private communication with a resident and/or family will be required or where therapy will require privacy or seclusion to preserve resident dignity.

3.1-3.5.2.2 Individual treatment areas

- (1) Space requirements
 - (a) Area. The individual treatment area shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters).
 - (b) Clearances. Room arrangement shall permit a minimum clearance of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) on at least three sides of the treatment furniture (e.g., chairs, recliners, tables, beds, mats).
- (2) Resident or participant privacy
 - (a) Exterior and interior windows in therapy areas shall have window treatments or shades.
 - (b) Individual treatment areas shall have privacy screens or cubicle curtains and appropriate provisions for resident dignity or private communication.
- (3) Handwashing stations. Individual treatment areas shall have a handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser.
 - (a) A handwashing station shall be provided in each therapy room where hands-on care is provided.
 - (b) One handwashing station shall be permitted to serve several treatment stations for both physical therapy and occupational therapy.

3.1-3.5.2.3 Group treatment areas

- (1) Space requirements. Group treatment areas shall be sized to accommodate provision of planned therapy services.
- (2) Handwashing stations
 - (a) The group treatment area shall have a handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser.
 - (b) One handwashing station shall be permitted to serve several group treatment areas, including spaces for physical therapy and occupational therapy.

3.1-3.5.3 Occupational Therapy Facilities

3.1-3.5.3.1 General. Where occupational therapy services will be provided in the facility, the requirements in this section shall be met.

3.1-3.5.3.2 Physical requirements. The following shall be provided:

- (1) Work areas, counters, and/or tables suitable for resident-operated mobility device access and standard seated access
- (2) An area for practicing activities of daily living. Where an outpatient therapy kitchen is provided, see Section 2.1-4.1.6 (Outpatient Therapy Kitchen) for requirements.
- (3) Handwashing stations. The occupational therapy area shall have a handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser.
 - (a) A handwashing station shall be provided in each occupational therapy room where hands-on care is provided.
 - (b) One handwashing station shall be permitted to serve several occupational and/or physical therapy treatment stations.

3.1-3.5.4 Other Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

3.1-3.5.4.1 Prosthetic and orthotic work areas. Where prosthetics and orthotics services will be offered in the facility, the following shall be provided:

- (1) A room space for evaluation and fitting. This room space shall have provisions for privacy for the fitting and adjustment of prosthetics.
- (2) Evaluation and fitting services room may be shared with another service when it is not in use.
- (3) Handwashing station
 - (a) Where staff is required to work with or mix wet material or handle material or chemicals that are caustic to the skin, a handwashing station shall be provided.
 - (b) Where staff is not required to work with or mix wet material or handle material or chemicals that are caustic to the skin, provision of a hand sanitation dispenser or a handwashing station shall be permitted.
- (4) Clinical sink. Where running water is required for materials preparation, a clinical sink or flushing-rim sink shall be provided. See Section 2.1-8.4.3.5 (Clinical sinks) for requirements.

3.1-3.5.4.2 Speech and hearing services

- (1) Where speech and hearing services are provided in the facility, a room space for evaluation and treatment shall be provided.
- (2) Speech and hearing services may use another room when not in use for other shared services.
- (3) Acoustic requirements
 - (a) The therapy room area shall be designed to provide speech privacy.

(b~~ii~~) The design shall minimize external sound from high-traffic, public, and similar noisy areas.

(c~~iii~~) The requirements in See Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) shall apply.

3.1-3.5.4.3 Therapeutic pool and hydrotherapy whirlpool. Where portable hydrotherapy whirlpools are provided, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.6 (Portable hydrotherapy whirlpools) for requirements.

3.1-3.5.4.4 Additional therapies. Where additional therapies are offered in the facility, space for these services shall be provided.

3.1-3.5.5 – 3.1-3.5.7 Reserved

3.1-3.5.8 Support Areas for Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

3.1-3.5.8.1 Reserved

3.1-3.5.8.2 Reception area. Where a reception area is provided, provisions shall be made for visual observation of the waiting area.

3.1-3.5.8.3 Documentation area

- (1) Provisions shall be made for documenting, filing, and retrieving resident records.
- (2) Combination of the reception area in Section 3.1-3.5.8.2 with the documentation area shall be permitted.

3.1-3.5.8.4 – 3.1-3.5.8.10 Reserved

3.1-3.5.8.11 Clean workroom. A clean workroom that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room) shall be readily accessible to the rehabilitation therapy area.

3.1-3.5.8.12 Soiled workroom. A soiled workroom that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom ~~and~~ ~~or~~ Soiled Holding Room) shall be readily accessible to the rehabilitation therapy area.

3.1-3.5.8.13 Equipment and supply storage

- (1) Space to store resident-operated mobility devices out of traffic while residents are receiving therapy services shall be provided directly or immediately accessible to the treatment area.
- (2) Equipment and supply storage shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage).

3.1-3.5.8.14 Environmental services rooms. Environmental services rooms shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.14 (Environmental Services Rooms).

3.1-3.5.9 Support Areas for Staff

3.1-3.5.9.1 Support areas for staff that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9 (Support Areas for Staff) shall be provided.

3.1-3.5.9.2 Support areas for staff shall be permitted to be shared.

3.1-3.5.10 Support Areas for Residents and Participants Receiving Rehabilitation Therapy

3.1-3.5.10.1 Changing area-

- (1) Where required by the therapy program, changing areas, showers, and/or lockers shall be provided.
- (2) The requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—~~Barrier-free~~**Accessible** showers) shall apply.

3.1-3.5.10.2 Toilet room

- (1) A toilet room with clearances that accommodate resident-operated mobility devices shall be provided.
- (2) The toilet room shall be provided directly accessible or adjacent to the changing area.
- (3) If therapy treatments include toileting, toilet rooms shall include handwashing stations. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.
- (4) See Section 3.1-2.2.2.6 (Resident toilet room) for additional requirements.

3.1-3.6 Wellness Centers

Where wellness facilities are provided, see Chapter 5.2 (Specific Requirements for Wellness Centers) for requirements.

3.1-3.7 Dialysis Facilities

3.1-3.7.1 General

3.1-3.7.1.1 Application. Dialysis facilities range from attached or freestanding renal dialysis centers that serve outpatients with kidney disease requiring dialysis to smaller, attached renal dialysis centers that treat only residents with kidney disease requiring dialysis in the nursing home.

- (1) Where dialysis facilities in the nursing home treat only residents, sections 3.1-3.7.2 (Dialysis Treatment Area) through 3.1-3.7.14.4 (Plumbing) shall apply.
- (2) Where dialysis treatment centers are provided serving outpatients, the requirements in the 2026 FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings, Chapter 10, Specific Requirements for Renal Dialysis Centers shall apply.

3.1-3.7.2+ Dialysis Treatment Area

3.1-3.7.2+1 General

- (1) This section shall apply to renal dialysis facilities in the nursing home that treat residents with acute kidney injury and end-stage renal disease.
- (2) The following general design criteria for the dialysis treatment area shall be met:
 - (a) The treatment area shall be a dedicated room. ~~separate from dining, recreation, and activity areas.~~
 - (b) No unrelated traffic shall pass through the dialysis treatment area.
 - (c) The treatment area shall not be a path of egress from other areas of the nursing home.
 - (d) ~~(2)~~ An illumination level of 500 lux (50 foot-candles) shall be provided at the dialysis treatment area.

[3.1-3.7.2.2 Patient scale. Dedicated space shall be provided for a patient scale that will accommodate a wheelchair.](#)

3.1-3.7.2.3-7.1.2 Dialysis patient care station

(1) Space requirements

- (a) Area. Each dialysis treatment station shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 meters), with a minimum wall length of 8 feet (2.44 meters) behind the treatment station.
- (b) Clearances. A minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) shall be provided between dialysis treatment chairs or beds.

(2) Water supply at the dialysis treatment station. Where water is supplied to portable reverse osmosis machines at the dialysis treatment station, the facility water supply shall be protected by a reduced pressure principal backflow preventer or a pressure vacuum breaker.

3.1-3.7.1.3 Reserved

3.1-3.7.2.4 Resident privacy. The treatment area shall accommodate provisions for visual privacy. See Section 2.1-3.2.4 (Resident, Participant, and Patient Privacy).

3.1-3.7.2.5 Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided within 25 feet (7.62 meters) of each treatment location.

3.1-3.7.2.6 Fluid disposal sink.

- (1) At least one dedicated sink shall be provided in the treatment area for fluid waste disposal.
- (2) The sink shall be of adequate depth to avoid potential splash of biological waste and cross-contamination to areas with stored or prepared clean items.
- (3) The fluid disposal sink shall have non-sensor-operated hands-free faucets or fittings.

[\(4\) The fluid disposal sink shall not have a soap dispenser but shall have a paper towel dispenser.](#)

3.1-3.7.32 – 3.1-3.7.7 Reserved

3.1-3.7.8 Support Areas for Dialysis Treatment Area

~~Storage shall be provided for each individual resident's dialysis supplies and dialysis machine when not in use.~~

[3.1-3.7.8.1 Reserved](#)

[3.1-3.7.8.2 Nurse Station](#)

[\(1\) A nurse station shall be located in the dialysis treatment area.](#)

[\(2\) The nurse station shall be designed so that each dialysis patient care station is visible from at least one nurse station location.](#)

- [\(a\) Visual observation shall include direct observation of the patient's face and vascular access.](#)

(b) Casework and fixed obstructions in the hemodialysis treatment area shall be no higher than 3 feet 8 inches (1.12 meters) in sight lines that would impair visual observation of patient care stations.

(3) A handwashing station shall be provided within 25 feet (7.62 meters) of the nurse station.

(4) Documentation. A work surface, storage cabinets, and locking storage for medical records shall be provided at the nurse station.

3.1-3.7.8.3 – 3.1-3.7.8.7 Reserved

3.1-3.7.8.8 Medication room, distribution unit, or cart

(1) A dedicated medication room, distribution unit, or cart shall be centrally located in the dialysis treatment area.

(2) Where the medication room, distribution unit, or cart is located in an open-plan area, it shall be located at least 6 feet (1.83 meters) from any individual patient care station.

3.1-3.7.8.9 Nourishment area

(1) Location

(a) A nourishment area immediately accessible to the dialysis area shall be provided.

(b) The nourishment area shall be permitted to be combined with the nurse station.

(2) The nourishment area shall contain the following:

(a) Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be located in or directly accessible to the nourishment room or area

(b) Work counter

(c) Lockable storage

(d) Fixtures and appliances appropriate for the types of beverages and/or nourishment provided

3.1-3.7.8.10 Reserved

3.1-3.7.8.11 Clean supply room

(1) A clean supply room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room).

(2) The clean supply room shall be permitted to be shared with the nursing home where it is readily accessible to the dialysis area.

3.1-3.7.8.12 Soiled holding room

(1) A soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom and Soiled Holding Room).

(2) The soiled holding room shall be permitted to be shared with the nursing home where it is readily accessible to the dialysis area.

3.1-3.7.8.13 Equipment and supply storage

- (1) Clean linen storage. Where blankets or other linens are used, a clean linen storage area shall be provided.
 - (a) A covered cart or closet for linen storage shall be permitted to meet this requirement.
 - (b) Where a covered cart is used, cart storage space shall be provided out of the path of normal traffic and under staff control.
 - (c) The clean linen storage area shall be permitted to be shared with the nursing home where it is immediately accessible to the dialysis area.
- (2) Clinical equipment and supply storage
 - (a) Storage areas or space for supply carts shall be provided.
 - (b) The equipment and supply storage areas shall be permitted to be shared with the nursing home where it is immediately accessible to the dialysis area.
- (3) Emergency equipment storage. An area for a crash cart shall be defined in the hemodialysis treatment area or directly accessible to the hemodialysis treatment area.

3.1-3.7.8.14 Equipment repair room

- (1) An equipment repair and breakdown room shall be provided.
- (2) The equipment repair room shall be equipped with the following:
 - (a) Dialysis repair station
 - (b) Handwashing station
 - (c) Drain or sink for equipment connection and testing
 - (d) Work counter
 - (e) Storage cabinet

3.1-3.7.8.15 Dialysate Preparation Area

- (1) Where dialysate preparation is conducted on-site, a dialysate preparation area shall be provided.
- (2) This area shall include the following:
 - (a) Handwashing station
 - (b) Storage space
 - (c) Work counter for mixing and distribution equipment

3.1-3.7.8.16 Emergency first-aid equipment. Face/eyewash devices shall be provided where required by the following:

- (1) OSHA 29 CFR 1910: *Occupational Safety and Health Standards*
- (2) ANSI/ISEA Z358.1: *American National Standard for Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment*

3.1-3.7.9 Support Areas for Staff

3.1-3.7.9.1 Staff toilet room

- (1) A staff toilet room with a handwashing station shall be provided.
- (2) The staff toilet room shall be permitted to be shared with the nursing home where it is readily accessible to the dialysis area.

3.1-3.7.9.2 Storage for staff. Lockable storage for personal items for staff members shall be provided in the dialysis area.

3.1-3.7.10 Support Areas for Patients

3.1-3.7.10.1 Reserved

3.1-3.7.10.2 Patient toilet room

- (1) A patient toilet room with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be provided.
- (2) This patient toilet room shall be permitted to be shared with the nursing home where it is readily accessible to the dialysis area.
- (3) The patient toilet room shall be equipped with a nurse call device.

3.1-3.7.11 – 3.1-3.7.13 Reserved

3.1-3.7.14 Building Systems

3.1-3.7.14.1 Reserved

3.1-3.7.14.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems. The requirements of Section 2.1-8.2 (HVAC Systems) shall apply amended as follows:

- (1) Natural ventilation via operable windows shall not be permitted due to risk of infection.
- (2) HVAC diffusers shall not be located directly over a patient chair/bed due to risk of infection and patient discomfort. Where PTAC units are used, airflow shall be directed away from the patient.

3.1-3.7.14.3 Electrical systems. For electrical system requirements, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.3 (Electrical Systems) shall apply in addition to the requirements in this section.

- (1) Dedicated circuits
 - (a) Two receptacles each on 20 amp circuits (minimum) shall be provided in each dialysis station specifically for use by dialysis equipment.
 - (b) These circuits shall be connected to emergency power.
 - (c) Where a ventilator is used by a resident, it shall be connected to an additional, separate emergency power circuit.
- (2) General-use receptacles shall be provided at each dialysis station.
- (3) Electrical receptacles shall not be shared between dialysis care stations.

(4) Two separate 20 amp circuits (minimum) shall be provided for each dialysis equipment repair station in equipment repair rooms.

(5) The receptacles in the dialysis stations shall be GFCI medical grade devices.

3.1-3.7.14.4 Plumbing for hemodialysis. Plumbing for hemodialysis shall comply with Section 2.1-8.4.2.4 ((Plumbing Systems—Hemodialysis water distribution).

3.1-4 Resident Support Facilities

3.1-4.1 Food Service Facilities

3.1-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the nursing home facility shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

3.1-4.1.2 Food Service Facility Types

Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

3.1-4.1.2.1 Commercial kitchen

3.1-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

3.1-4.1.2.3 Household kitchen

3.1-4.1.2.4 Social activity kitchen

3.1-4.1.2.5 Reserved

3.1-4.1.2.6 Warming/serving kitchen

3.1-4.2 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

3.1-4.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Linen and Laundry Service Facilities) shall apply as amended in this section.

~~**3.1-4.2.1.1** Each facility shall have provisions for storing and processing clean and soiled/contaminated linen.~~

~~**3.1-4.2.1.2** Where a facility includes a commercial laundry, processing shall be permitted to take place in the facility, in a separate building on or off site, or in a shared laundry.~~

~~**3.1-4.2.2 Laundry Service Facilities**~~

3.1-4.2.2 On-Site Commercial Laundry

~~**3.1-4.2.2.1** Where linen is processed on-site in a commercial laundry, the requirements of Section 2.1-4.2.2 (On-Site Linen Processing Facilities) shall apply.~~

~~**3.1-4.2.2.2 Layout.** Equipment Linen shall be arranged to permit an orderly workflow permitted to be processed on-site in a personal laundry facility meeting the requirements of 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) in connected household and freestanding household nursing home environments. The following requirements shall apply: and minimize cross-traffic that might mix clean and soiled operations.~~

~~(1) The personal laundry facility shall be provided to handle, clean, and store linen according to acceptable methods of infection control as documented in the facility infection control risk assessment.~~

~~(2) The personal laundry facility shall have separated clean and soiled areas to limit cross-contamination.~~

~~(3) The personal laundry facility shall be ventilated to the outdoors.~~

~~(3) Where commercial soap dispensers are used, the personal laundry room shall be sized to accommodate this additional equipment.~~

3.1-4.2.2.2 Spaces and equipment. The following shall be provided:

(1) Receiving, holding, and sorting room

(a) This room shall be provided to accommodate control and collection of soiled linen.

(b) Soiled linen chutes shall be permitted to discharge in this room or in an adjacent separate room.

(2) Washers/extractors. Washers/extractors shall be located between the soiled linen receiving and clean processing areas.

(3) Dryers

(4) Folding area. A work counter for sorting and folding shall be provided.

(5) Supply storage. Storage shall be provided for laundry supplies.

(6) Inspection and mending area. An area shall be provided for linen inspection and mending.

3.1-4.2.3 Off-Site Commercial Laundry

Where linen is processed off-site, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2.3 (Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Linen Processing) shall apply.

3.1-4.2.4 Personal Laundry

Linen shall be permitted to be processed on-site in a personal laundry facility meeting the requirements of 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities).

3.1-4.2.3 Support Areas for Linen Services

3.1-4.2.3.1 Central clean linen storage. A central clean linen storage and issuing room shall be provided in addition to the linen storage required at individual resident units. See Section 2.1-3.8.13.1 (Clean linen storage) for additional information.

3.1-4.2.3.2 Soiled holding room. Separate central or decentralized room(s) shall be provided for receiving and holding soiled linen for pickup or processing. The soiled holding room shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom and Soiled Holding Room) ~~and those in this section.~~

~~(1) Room(s) shall have ventilation and exhaust.~~

~~(2) Discharge from soiled linen chutes shall be received in this room or in a separate room, as required by the local authority having jurisdiction.~~

~~(3) Room(s) used for processing shall have a deep sink for soaking and/or a flushing rim sink.~~

3.1-4.2.3.3 Linen carts

(1) Provisions shall be made for parking clean and soiled linen carts separately and out of traffic.

(2) Means shall be provided for cleaning linen carts on premises (or for exchanging carts off premises).

3.1-4.2.3.4 Handwashing stations

(1) Handwashing stations shall be provided in each area where unbagged soiled linen is handled.

(2) The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall apply, except for Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (7) (Mirror).

3.1-4.2.4 Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Linen Processing

Where linen is processed off-site or in a separate building on-site, the following shall be provided:

3.1-4.2.4.1 A service entrance, protected from inclement weather. This shall be permitted to be shared with other services.

3.1-4.2.4.2 A control station, which can be shared with other services

3.1-5 Building Support Facilities

The requirements in Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) shall apply.

3.1-6 Public and Administrative Areas

3.1-6.1 General

Nursing homes shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6 (Public and Administrative Areas) in addition to those in this section.

3.1-6.2 Public Areas

3.1-6.2.1 Reserved

3.1-6.2.2 ~~Lobby~~Entrance and Reception

An entrance and reception area shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Entrance and Reception). ~~Where a central lobby is provided, the following requirements shall be included:~~

~~**3.1-6.2.2.1** A counter or desk for reception and information~~

~~**3.1-6.2.2.2** Public waiting area~~

~~3.1-6.2.2.3 Public toilet facilities. See Section 2.1-6.2.2.3 (Public toilet room) for requirements.~~

~~3.1-6.2.2.4 Access to drinking water~~

3.1-7 Design and Construction Requirements

3.1-7.1 Building Codes and Standards

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

3.1-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

3.1-7.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.1 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings—General) shall apply.

3.1-7.2.2 Architectural Details

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2 (Architectural Details) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

3.1-7.2.2.1 – 3.1-7.2.2.2 Reserved

3.1-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware

(1) Door type

- (a) All doors between corridors, rooms, or areas subject to occupancy shall be of the swing type or shall be sliding doors.
- (b) Manual or automatic sliding doors shall be permitted where their use does not compromise fire and other emergency egress requirements.

(2) – (3) Reserved

(4) Door hardware

- (a) Sliding doors shall not have floor tracks.
- (b) In shared resident bathrooms, use of privacy locks with emergency access release shall be permitted.

(5) Doors for resident bathing/toilet facilities

- (a) Door type. Rooms that contain bathtubs, showers, or toilets for resident use shall have one of the following:
 - (i) Two separate doors
 - (ii) A door that swings outward
 - (iii) A door equipped with emergency rescue hardware

(iv) A sliding door other than a pocket door

(b) Door opening. Where the bathing area or toilet room opens onto a public area or corridor, visual privacy shall be provided.

3.1-7.2.2.4 – 3.1-7.2.2.9 Reserved

3.1-7.2.2.10 Handrails and lean rails:

(1) Handrails shall be provided on both sides of public corridors.

(2) The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.10 shall apply in addition to those in this section.

3.1-7.2.3 Surfaces

3.1-7.2.3.1 The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

3.1-7.2.3.2 To reduce surface contamination linked to health care–associated infections, surface materials selected shall possess the following performance characteristics:

(1) Surfaces shall be cleanable.

(2) Surfaces shall have no crevices or rough textures, ~~joints, or seams.~~

(3) Surfaces, joints, and seams shall be nonabsorptive, nonporous, and smooth.

3.1-7.2.4 Furnishings

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.4 (Furnishings) shall apply.

3.1-8 Building Systems

3.1-8.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) shall apply.

3.1-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

3.1-8.2.1 General

3.1-8.2.1.1 **Application.** HVAC systems that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided for nursing homes.

3.1-8.2.1.2 **Ventilation and space conditioning.** Ventilation and space conditioning systems shall meet the requirements of Level 1 ventilation and space conditioning systems in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2. (3) (Ventilation and space conditioning).

~~(1) See Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

~~(2) Ventilation systems shall be designed to provide control of environmental comfort, asepsis, and odor control in resident spaces.~~

- ~~(a) Design of the ventilation system shall provide air movement that is generally from clean to less clean areas. If any form of variable air volume or load shedding system is used for energy conservation, it shall not compromise the pressure balancing relationships or the minimum air changes required in Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*).~~
 - ~~(b) See Table 9-1 in Part 6 for ventilation requirements intended to provide for comfort and asepsis and odor control in nursing home spaces that directly affect resident care.~~
 - ~~(c) For spaces not specifically listed in Table 9-1 in Part 6:
 - ~~(i) Ventilation requirements shall be those for functionally equivalent spaces in Table 9-1 in Part 6.~~
 - ~~(ii) Where spaces with prescribed rates are included in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality* or ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* and Table 9-1 in Part 6, the higher of the air change rates shall be used.~~~~
 - ~~(d) Air change rates. The minimum number of total air changes per hour indicated in Table 9-1 in Part 6 shall be either supplied for positive pressure rooms or exhausted for negative pressure rooms.
 - ~~(i) For spaces that are required by Table 9-1 in Part 6 to have a negative pressure relationship but are not required to be exhausted, the supply airflow rate shall be used to compute the required minimum total air changes per hour.~~
 - ~~(ii) For spaces that require a positive or negative pressure relationship, the number of air changes per hour can be reduced when the space is unoccupied as long as the required pressure relationship to adjoining spaces is maintained while the space is unoccupied, and the minimum number of air changes indicated is reestablished whenever the space is occupied.~~~~
 - ~~(e) Use of controls intended to switch the required pressure relationships between spaces from positive to negative, and vice versa, shall not be permitted.~~
 - ~~(f) For air handling systems serving multiple spaces, system minimum outdoor air quantity shall be calculated using one of the following methods:
 - ~~(i) As the sum of the individual space requirements~~
 - ~~(ii) By the “ventilation rate procedure” (multiple zone formula) described in Section 6.2 (Ventilation Rate Procedure) in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1. The minimum outdoor air change rate listed in this standard shall be interpreted as the V_{oz} (zone outdoor airflow) for purposes of this calculation.~~~~
- ~~(3) Outdoor air intakes and exhaust discharges. Equipment shall comply with Table 5-1 (Air Intake Minimum Separation Distance) in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1.~~

3.1-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

3.1-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

3.1-8.2.3.1 Fuel-fired equipment rooms. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.1 (Fuel-fired equipment rooms) shall apply.

3.1-8.2.3.2 Areas of refuge. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.2 (Areas of refuge) shall apply.

3.1-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

3.1-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

3.1-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

3.1-8.2.6.1 Filter efficiencies

- (1) For centralized recirculated systems, see Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for required filter efficiencies.
 - (a) Each filter bank with an efficiency greater than MERV 12 shall be provided with an installed, readily accessible manometer or differential pressure-measuring device that provides a reading of differential static pressure across the filter to indicate when the filter needs to be replaced.
 - (b) All air provided to a space by centralized recirculated systems shall be filtered.
- (2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:
 - (a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.
 - (b) Serve only a single space.
 - (c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

3.1-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

- (1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.
- (2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

3.1-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

3.1-8.2.7.1 General. See Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for additional requirements.

3.1-8.2.7.2 Heating systems

- (1) Reserve capacity

(a) Central plant HVAC heating systems. Central equipment heating sources and essential accessories shall be provided in number and arrangement sufficient to accommodate the facility needs (e.g., reserve capacity) even when any one of the central equipment heat sources or essential accessories is not operational due to a breakdown or routing maintenance.

(b) All other HVAC heating systems

(i) Heating sources and essential accessories shall be provided in number and arrangement sufficient that when any one of the heat sources or essential accessories is not operational due to a breakdown or routine maintenance, that no more than 20 percent of resident rooms or 20 percent of the resident care areas have heating disrupted.

(ii) Heating sources and essential accessories shall be provided in number and arrangement sufficient to accommodate the facility needs (i.e., reserve capacity) even when any one of the heat sources or essential accessories is not operational due to a breakdown or routine maintenance.

(cb) Reserve capacity shall not be required if the 99 percent heating dry-bulb temperature for the nursing home is greater than or equal to 25°F (−4°C).

(2) When a heat source is off-line, the capacity of the remaining source shall be sufficient to provide for domestic hot water and dietary purposes and to provide heating for resident care areas and resident rooms.

3.1-8.2.7.3 Cooling systems:

(1) Central plant HVAC cooling systems. For central cooling systems greater than a 400-ton (1407 kW) peak cooling load, the number and arrangement of cooling sources and essential accessories shall be sufficient to support the nursing home operation plan upon a breakdown or during routine maintenance of any one of the cooling sources.

(2) All other HVAC cooling systems with a combined cooling capacity greater than a 400-ton (1407 kW) peak cooling load. Cooling sources and essential accessories shall be provided in number and arrangement sufficient that when any one of the heat sources or essential accessories is not operational due to a breakdown or routine maintenance, that no more than 20 percent of resident rooms or 20 percent of the resident care areas have cooling disrupted.

3.1-8.2.7.4 Temperature control. See Section 2.1-8.2.7.2 (Temperature control) for requirements.

3.1-8.3 Electrical Systems

3.1-8.3.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.1 (Electrical Systems—General) shall apply.

3.1-8.3.2 Reserved

3.1-8.3.3 Power-Generating and Power-Storing Equipment

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.3 (Power-Generating and Power-Storing Equipment) shall apply.

3.1-8.3.4~~3~~ Electrical Receptacles

3.1-8.3.4.1 Electrical receptacles shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.4 (Electrical Receptacles) ~~as amended in this section.~~

~~General. Omission of receptacles from exterior walls where construction makes installation impractical shall be permitted.~~

3.1-8.3.4.2 Receptacles in resident rooms. The requirements in Table 2.1-1 (Requirements for Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces) shall apply.

~~(1) Two duplex outlets (i.e., four receptacles), with one on each side of the planned bed location, shall be provided.~~

~~(2) Where electric-powered beds will be used, an additional receptacle shall be provided at the head of the bed.~~

3.1-8.3.5 Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas

The requirements in See Section 2.1-8.3.5 (Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas) and Table 2.1-1 (Required Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces) shall apply for requirements.

3.1-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) shall be provided.

3.1-8.5 Communications Systems

3.1-8.5.1 General

3.1-8.5.1.1 Communications systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5 (Communication Systems) ~~this section~~ shall be provided for nursing homes.

~~3.1-8.5.1.2 See Section 2.1-8.5.1 (Communications Systems—General) for requirements.~~

3.1-8.5.2 Call System

A nurse/staff call system meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.2 (Call System) shall be provided.

3.1-8.5.2.1 General

~~(1) Use of alternative technologies, including wireless systems, shall be permitted for emergency or nurse call systems.~~

~~(a) Where wireless systems are used, consideration shall be given to electromagnetic compatibility between internal and external sources.~~

~~(b) Wireless systems shall comply with UL 1069: *Standard for Hospital Signaling and Nurse Call Equipment*.~~

~~(2) Nurse and emergency call systems shall be listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.~~

~~3.1-8.5.2.2 Resident room bed stations~~

- ~~(1) Each bed location shall be provided with a resident bed station with call device that is accessible to the resident.
 - ~~(a) One resident bed station shall be permitted to serve two beds.~~
 - ~~(b) Use of wearable devices shall be permitted.~~~~
- ~~(2) A call initiated by a resident activating either a call device attached to a resident's call station or a portable device that sends a call signal shall register at the staff call station or device and shall do one of the following:
 - ~~(a) Activate a visual signal in the corridor at the resident's door. In multi-corridor or cluster resident units, additional visual signals shall be installed at corridor intersections.~~
 - ~~(b) Activate a handheld mobile device carried by a staff member, identifying the specific resident and location from which the call was placed.~~~~

~~**3.1-8.5.2.3 Emergency bath and shower station.** A means to summon staff assistance shall be provided in resident toilet rooms and resident bathrooms.~~

- ~~(1) The emergency bath and shower station shall be permitted to be hardwired or wearable.
 - ~~(a) Where a pull cord is used, it shall be permitted to serve a toilet and a shower/tub if it is accessible to each.~~
 - ~~(b) Where a wearable device is used, it shall be waterproof.~~~~
- ~~(2) The emergency bath station shall comply with UL 1069: *Standard for Hospital Signaling and Nurse Call Equipment*.~~
- ~~(3) Call signal. The emergency bath station shall be designed to meet the following requirements:
 - ~~(a) The call signal for the emergency bath station shall be distinct from the call signal for the resident room bed station.~~
 - ~~(b) The emergency call signal shall be permitted to be turned off only at the location where it was activated.~~~~

~~**3.1-8.5.2.4 Common area call stations.** A call station shall be provided in each resident dining, recreation, and activity area and hair salon.~~

~~**3.1-8.5.2.5 Common system notification.** The signal from any call device shall activate at the staff work area and/or signal a wearable device carried by staff.~~

~~3.1-8.5.3 Telecommunications Systems~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.3 (Telecommunications Systems) for requirements.~~

~~3.1-8.5.4 Grounding for Telecommunications Spaces~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.4 (Grounding for Telecommunications Spaces) for requirements.~~

~~3.1-8.5.5 Cabling Pathways and Raceway Requirements~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.5 (Cabling Pathways and Raceway Requirements) for requirements.~~

3.1-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

3.1-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

3.1-8.7.1 General

3.1-8.7.1.1 Daylighting and artificial lighting systems that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided for nursing homes.

3.1-8.7.1.2 The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.1 (Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems—General) shall apply.

3.1-8.7.2 Daylighting Systems in Resident Living Areas

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.2 (Daylighting Systems in Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas) shall apply.

3.1-8.7.3 Artificial Lighting Systems

3.1-8.7.3.1 Light fixtures. Light fixtures shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.3.1 (Light fixtures).

3.1-8.7.3.2 Lighting requirements for specific locations

- (1) Resident unit corridors. Lighting for resident unit corridors shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.3.2 (Lighting requirements for specific locations) in addition to the requirements in this section.
 - (a) Resident unit corridors shall have general illumination with provisions for reducing light levels at night.
 - (b) Corridors and common areas used by residents shall have even light distribution to avoid glare, shadows, and scalloped lighting effects.
- (2) Resident rooms and toilet rooms. These rooms shall have general lighting, task lighting, and night-lighting.
 - (a) Task lighting
 - (i) At least one task light shall be provided for each resident.
 - (ii) Task light controls shall be immediately accessible to residents and staff at the head of the bed (including multiple-bed locations).
 - (b) Night-lighting. Night-lighting shall be provided in the pathway to and from the bedside and the bathroom.
 - (i) Night-lighting shall be mounted no higher than 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) above the floor.
 - (ii) Night-lighting shall be controlled separately from ambient lighting.
 - (iii) Night-lighting shall have a low light level.

(iv) Because night-lights may disturb resident sleep even when properly specified, located, and operated, care providers shall be permitted to use portable light sources or switched night lights for added control of this light source.

(c) Resident unit toilet rooms shall have general illumination with provision for reducing light levels at night.

3.1-8.8 Elevator Systems

3.1-8.8.1 General

3.1-8.8.1.1 Buildings having resident-use areas on more than one floor shall have electric or hydraulic elevators.

3.1-8.8.1.2 Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems).

~~3.1-8.8.1 General~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems) for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

~~3.1-8.8.1.1 Application~~

~~(1) All buildings having resident use areas on more than one floor shall have electric or hydraulic elevator(s).~~

~~(2) Where the facility is part of a general hospital, elevators may be shared.~~

~~3.1-8.8.1.2 Number~~

~~(1) At least one elevator sized to accommodate a bed, a gurney, and/or medical carts and resident-operated mobility device users shall be installed where residents are living or receiving health, care, or support services on any floor other than the main entrance floor.~~

~~(2) At least two elevators shall be installed where 60 to 200 residents are living or receiving health, care, or support services on floors other than the main entrance floor.~~

~~(3) At least three elevators shall be installed where 201 to 350 residents are living or receiving health, care, or support services on floors other than main entrance floor.~~

~~(4) For facilities with more than 350 residents living or receiving health, care, or support services above the main entrance floor, the number of elevators shall be determined from a study of the facility plan and from the estimated vertical transportation requirements.~~

~~3.1-8.8.2 Dimensions~~

~~Elevator car doors shall have a clear opening of no less than 3 feet 8 inches (1.12 meters).~~

~~3.1-8.8.3 Handrails~~

~~Elevator cars shall have handrails on all sides without an entrance door. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.10 (Handrails and lean rails) for additional requirements.~~

3.2 Specific Requirements for Hospice Facilities

3.2-1 General

3.2-1.1 Application

3.2-1.1.1 General

This chapter shall apply to freestanding hospice facilities and separately licensed hospice facilities that are part of other care and support settings.

3.2-1.1.1.1 Hospice facilities shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

3.2-1.1.1.2 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to hospice facilities when cross-referenced in this chapter.

3.2-1.1.2 Design Criteria

3.2-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved Sustainable design. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.~~

3.2-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral or mental health issues~~, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

3.2-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

3.2-1.1.2.4 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care. If the care population will include individuals receiving palliative care, see Section 2.1-2.1.2.4 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care) for requirements.

3.2-1.2 Functional Program

A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

3.2-1.3 Site

See Chapter 1.3 (Site) for requirements.

3.2-1.4 ~~Reserved Safety Risk Assessment~~

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

3.2-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

3.2-1.5.1 General

See sections 1.2-1.3 (Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) for requirements.

3.2-1.5.2 Flexibility

Hospice facilities shall be designed to provide flexibility to meet the changing needs of families and visitors attending to patients receiving hospice care.

3.2-1.5.3 Supportive Environment

See sections 1.2-5.1.3 (Planning Considerations for Resident Quality of Life) and 1.2-6.7 (Planning Considerations for Inclusive Environments) for requirements.

3.2-1.5.4 Barrier-Free Environment

The [requirements in sections 1.2-6.7 \(Planning Considerations for Inclusive Environments\)](#) shall apply. ~~design through organization of functional space, specification of ergonomically appropriate and arranged furniture and equipment, and selection of details and finishes shall eliminate as many barriers as possible to access by the hospice patient, family, friends, and staff to space, services, equipment, and utilities that support the hospice patient.~~

3.2-2 Hospice Patient Areas

3.2-2.1 General

Hospice patient areas in freestanding hospice facilities and separately licensed hospice facilities that are part of other care and support settings shall meet the minimum design requirements in this section.

3.2-2.2 Hospice Patient Unit

3.2-2.2.1 General

[The requirements of Section 2.1-2.2.1 \(General\) shall apply in addition to the requirements of this section.](#)

3.2-2.2.1.1 Hospice unit size. ~~In the absence of location requirements, consideration shall be given to restricting the size of the Hospice care units shall be to a maximum of 20 occupants patients.~~

3.2-2.2.1.2 Unit Layout

- (1) In new construction, hospice units shall be designed to avoid unrelated travel through the unit.
- (2) The unit layout shall reflect the care model and related staffing.

~~**3.2-2.2.1.3 Hospice patient telephone access.** See Section 2.1-2.2.1.4 (Resident telephone access) for requirements.~~

3.2-2.2.2 Hospice Patient Room

Each hospice patient room shall meet the requirements in this section.

3.2-2.2.2.1 Capacity. The hospice patient room shall be single-resident unless the need for double-resident is justified in the functional program, in which case hospice patient room capacity shall not exceed two patients.

3.2-2.2.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Area

- (a) Hospice patient rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 153 square feet (14.21 square meters) with a minimum wall width at the head of the bed of 10 feet (3.05 meters).
- (b) Family support zone. The clear floor area required in Section 3.2-2.2.2.2 (1)(a) includes a family support zone with a minimum clear floor area of 33 square feet (3.07 square meters).

(2) Clearances

- (a) The clearances in section 2.1-2.2.2.2 (2) (Resident room: Space requirements—Clearances) shall be provided as amended in this section.
- (b) A transfer side clearance of 48 inches (1.22 meters) between the bed and any wall or other fixed obstruction on the transfer side of the bed shall be provided.

(3) Space shall be provided in the hospice patient room to accommodate the following:

- (a) Delivery of hospice patient care
- (b) Use of patient-operated mobility devices, where needed
- (c) In-room dining, where required by the care model
- (d) ~~Hospice patient storage. Each hospice patient shall be provided with an individual wardrobe or closet that meets the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.2.2 (3)(c) (Nursing Homes—Resident storage).~~ Closet or wardrobe. Each resident shall be provided with an individual wardrobe or closet.
 - (i) Where a movable wardrobe is provided, it shall be permitted to be located adjacent to the head of the bed.
 - (ii) This closet or wardrobe shall have a minimum dimension that provides a clear area of 22 inches deep (55.88 centimeters) 2 feet 4 inches (71.12 centimeters) wide.
 - (iii) A clothes rod shall be provided that can be adjusted to a height accessible to the resident. Accommodations shall be made for storing full-length garments.
 - (iv) A shelf shall be provided that can be adjusted to a height accessible to the resident. Omission of the shelf shall be permitted where the unit provides at least two accessible drawers.
 - (v) Dresser. The dresser shall be permitted to be located in one of the following areas:
 - In or as part of a wardrobe or closet
 - On the wall adjacent to the head of the bed
- (e) Hospice patient and visitor seating
 - (i) Space for seating for hospice patients and visitors shall be provided.

(ii) Each patient room shall be equipped to accommodate a television. The room shall be configured so that each hospice patient can view the television from the hospice patient chair.

~~(43)~~ Space shall be provided for at least one overnight guest in hospice patient rooms. The requirements in Section 2.1-2.10.2 (Overnight Guest Accommodations) shall apply.

~~(54)~~ Space to accommodate hospice patient food storage, refrigeration, and reheating shall be located in the hospice patient room or in an area close to hospice patient rooms. See Section 2.1-4.1.4 (Household Kitchen) for additional information for hospice patient and family kitchen areas outside the hospice patient room.

3.2-2.2.2.3 Window

(1) The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

(2) Provision shall be made for the hospice patient and family to completely darken the hospice patient room as needed.

3.2-2.2.2.4 Patient privacy

(1) Visual privacy shall be provided for each hospice patient in double-resident rooms.

(2) Design for privacy shall not restrict patient access to the toilet, room entrance, window, or other shared common areas in the hospice patient room.

3.2-2.2.2.5 Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in each hospice patient room.

(1) Omission of this station shall be permitted where a handwashing station is located in a directly accessible toilet room that serves that room only.

(2) Design requirements

(a) For handwashing station design details, see Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

(b) For sink design, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.2 (Plumbing Fixtures—Handwashing station sink).

(c) For casework details, see Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins).

3.2-2.2.2.6 Hospice patient toilet room. Each hospice patient shall have access to a toilet room without entering a general corridor.

(1) One toilet room shall serve no more than two hospice patients in a bedroom.

(2) Space requirements

(a) Toilet rooms shall be sized and configured to accommodate:

(i) Staff assistance, including use of lifting equipment

(ii) Accessibility standards that support independent hospice patient use

(b) Clearance shall be provided on both sides of the toilet to enable physical access and maneuvering by staff members assisting the hospice patient with wheelchair-to-toilet transfers and returns.

(3) The toilet room shall contain the following:

- (a) Toilet
 - (b) Handwashing station meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).
 - (c) Individual storage for the personal effects of each hospice patient
- (4) Doors and door hardware shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (Doors and door hardware).
- (5) Grab bars
- (a) Grab bars shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.9 (Grab bars).
 - (b) Where hospice patients are capable of independent transfers, alternative grab bar configurations shall be permitted.

3.2-2.2.2.7 Hospice patient bathroom. Where a bathtub or shower is provided in the hospice patient toilet room, the following requirements shall be met in addition to the requirements in Section 3.2-2.2.2.6 (Hospice patient toilet room):

- (1) Space shall be provided for drying, dressing, and grooming.
- (2) A counter and a shelf or cabinet for personal item storage shall be provided. See Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins) for details.
- (3) See Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—~~Barrier-free~~ **Accessible** showers) for shower requirements.

3.2-2.2.3 —~~3.2-2.2.4~~ Reserved

3.2-2.2.4 Accommodations for care of individuals of size

(1) If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply [as amended in this section](#).

(2) **Family support zone.** A minimum clear floor area of 33 square feet (3.07 square meters) shall be added to the clear floor area required in Section 2.1-2.2.4.2 (2) (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size: Space requirements—Area) to accommodate a family support zone.

3.2-2.2.5 Special Care Hospice Patient Rooms

The requirements in this section shall apply to all hospice facilities that include these room types.

3.2-2.2.5.1 Airborne infection isolation room. Where the need for an AII room is identified by the ICRA, an AII room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.5.1 (Airborne infection isolation room) shall be provided.

3.2-2.2.5.2 Ventilator-dependent hospice patient rooms. Where rooms dedicated to serving hospice patients dependent on a ventilator are provided, they shall meet the following requirements in addition to those in Section 3.2-2.2.2 (Hospice Patient Room).

- (1) Hospice patient rooms for ventilator-dependent hospice patients shall provide:
 - (a) Space for the ventilator unit at the bedside

- (b) Additional clearances for hospice patient-operated mobility devices that may be oversized to accommodate a ventilator
- (c) Provisions for oxygen and vacuum. Any installation of nonflammable medical gas, air, or clinical vacuum systems shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.
- (d) Backup electrical requirements. See Section 2.1-8.3.4 (Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas).

(2) Support areas

- (a) Where a ventilator-dependent resident unit is provided, support areas shall be provided in the unit to accommodate staffing associated with ventilator services.
- (b) Equipment space. A dedicated space shall be provided for one of the following:
 - (i) Service and maintenance of ventilator equipment
 - (ii) Storage for backup or exchange ventilators
- (c) All hospice patient activity and support areas shall be provided with essential power receptacles to support continued ventilator operation in the event of a power outage. See Section 2.1-8.3.4 (Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas) for additional requirements.

3.2-2.2.5.3 Reserved

3.2-2.2.5.4 Quiet room. Where a quiet room is provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.5.4 (Quiet room) shall apply.

3.2-2.2.6 – Reserved

3.2-2.2.7 [Peritoneal Dialysis](#)

[Where residents self-perform or receive peritoneal dialysis, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.7 \(Peritoneal Dialysis\) shall apply.](#)

3.2-2.2.8 Support Areas for the Hospice Patient Unit

3.2-2.2.8.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.8.1 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

3.2-2.2.8.2 Staff work area. See Section 2.1-2.8.2 (Staff Work Area) for requirements.

3.2-2.2.8.3 Reserved

3.2-2.2.8.4 Consultation room

- (1) A small sitting area shall be provided to allow for private conversations.
- (2) The conference room described in Section 3.2-6.3.1 (Administrative Areas—Office and Conference Space) shall be permitted to serve this function.
- (3) This room shall be permitted to serve as a space for bereavement.

3.2-2.2.8.5 – 3.2-2.2.8.7 Reserved

3.2-2.2.8.8 Medication distribution locations. See Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations) for requirements.

3.2-2.2.8.9 Central bathing room. ~~The central bathing room shall meet the requirements in~~

~~(1) General. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers).~~ ~~3.1-2.2.8.9 (Nursing Homes—Central bathing room)~~ shall apply.

(2) Number

~~(a)~~ A minimum of one ~~accessible~~ bathtub or shower that is available to all hospice patients shall be provided meeting accessibility standards. ~~be provided.~~

~~(b)~~ Additional bathtubs or showers shall be provided as required to serve the unit size and care population.

(c) Each tub or shower shall be in an individual room which provides space for the private use of the bathing fixture for drying and dressing, and for a wheelchair and an attendant.

3.2-2.2.8.10 Personal services (hair salon/spa) areas. Where facilities for personal services are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.8.10 (Nursing Homes—Personal services areas).

3.2-2.2.8.11 Clean workroom. The requirements in Section 2.1-~~4.5~~ ~~3.8.11~~ (Clean Workroom ~~and~~ ~~or~~ Clean Supply Room) shall apply.

3.2-2.2.8.12 Soiled holding room ~~workroom~~. The requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom and Soiled Holding Room) except Section 2.1-3.8.12.2 (Soiled workroom) shall apply. ~~for requirements.~~

3.2-2.2.8.13 Equipment and supply storage:

(1) The requirements in See Section 2.1-3.8.13 ~~3.1-2.2.8.13 (Nursing Homes—Equipment and Supply Storage)~~ shall apply as amended in this section. ~~for requirements.~~

(2) Storage for mobility devices and support equipment. Storage for resident-operated mobility devices and personal support equipment shall be located so this equipment can be accessed by residents at all times without entering another resident’s living space.

3.2-2.2.8.14 ~~Reserved~~ Environmental Services Room. The requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.14 (Environmental Services Room) shall apply.

3.2-2.2.8.15 Personal laundry facilities. Personal laundry facilities shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities).

3.2-2.2.9 Support Areas for Staff

3.2-2.2.9.1 General

(1) See Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

(2) Combination of space for staff breaks and dining with staff reporting areas shall be permitted.

3.2-2.2.9.2 Staff lounge. The staff lounge shall be adjacent to the staff work area and staff toilet room. See sections 2.1-2.8.2 (Staff Work Area) and 2.1-2.9.2 (Staff Toilet Room).

3.2-2.2.9.3 Dining areas. Dining areas separate from those for residents and visitors shall be provided for staff.

3.2-2.2.9.4 Shower room. Showering capabilities shall be provided for staff either in a central shower room or in a dedicated staff toilet/shower room.

3.2-2.2.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors

3.2-2.2.10.1 Family room

- (1) A family room sized to accommodate visitors and family shall be provided.
- (2) Each family room shall be permitted to serve a variety of functions, including the following:
 - (a) Children’s playroom
 - (b) Family kitchenette. See Section 2.1-4.1.4 (Household Kitchen) for additional information.
 - (c) Dining area
- (3) Inclusion of a gas fireplace shall be permitted in a family room where non-operable glass doors are used.

~~**3.2-2.2.10.2 Overnight guest accommodations.** See Section 2.1-2.10.2 (Overnight Guest Accommodations) for requirements.~~

3.2-2.2.10.23 Pet accommodations. See Section 2.1-2.10.3 (Pet Accommodations) for requirements.

3.2-2.2.10.34 Shower and toilet facilities. Shower and toilet facilities for family and visitors shall be provided.

3.2-2.2.10.45 Volunteer and clergy accommodations. Secured storage for the belongings of volunteers and clergy shall be provided.

3.2-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

3.2-2.3.1 General

3.2-2.3.1.1 Space for dining and recreation shall be provided to meet the needs of the care model.

3.2-2.3.1.2 See Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) for additional requirements.

3.2-2.3.2 Dining Areas Facilities

3.2-2.3.2.1 The requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2 (Dining Areas Facilities) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

3.2-2.3.2.2 See Section 3.2-2.2.2 (2)(c) (Hospice Patient Room: Space requirements—In-room dining...) for requirements for dining accommodations in hospice patient rooms.

3.2-2.3.3 Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas

Lounge areas shall be provided for hospice patient and visitor use based on the number of hospice patients being served.

3.2-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

~~3.2-2.3.4.1~~ Outdoor activity areas [meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-2.3.4 \(Outdoor Activity Areas\)](#) shall be [provided available](#) to hospice patients and visitors.

~~3.2-2.3.4.2 See Section 2.1 2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas) for additional requirements and information.~~

3.2-2.3.5 – 3.2-2.3.7 Reserved

3.2-2.3.8 Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

Toilet facilities that accommodate hospice patient-operated mobility devices shall be readily accessible to all dining, recreation, and activity locations.

3.2-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

3.2-3.1 General

See Section 2.1-3.1 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas—General) for requirements.

3.2-3.2 Exam/Treatment Room

Where an exam/treatment room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2 (Exam/Treatment Room).

3.2-4 Hospice Patient Support Facilities

3.2-4.1 Food Service Facilities

3.2-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the hospice facility shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

3.2-4.1.2 Types of Food Service Facilities

Where the food service facility types listed in this section are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

3.2-4.1.2.1 Commercial Kitchen

3.2-4.1.2.2 Retail Kitchen

3.2-4.1.2.3 Household Kitchen

3.2-4.1.2.4 – 3.2-4.1.2.5 Reserved

3.2-4.1.2.6 Warming/Serving Kitchen

3.2-4.2 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

~~See Section 3.1-4.2 (Nursing Homes—Linen and Laundry Service Facilities) for requirements.~~

3.2-4.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Linen and Laundry Service Facilities) shall apply as amended in this section.

3.2-4.2.2 On-Site Commercial Laundry

Where linen is processed on-site in a commercial laundry, the requirements of Section 2.1-4.2.2 (On-Site Linen Processing Facilities) shall apply.

3.2-4.2.3 Off-Site Linen Processing

Where linen is processed off-site, the requirements of Section 2.1-4.2.3 (Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Linen Processing) shall apply.

3.2-4.2.4 On-Site Personal Laundry Facility

Linen shall be permitted to be processed on-site in a personal laundry facility meeting the requirements of 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) in small ambulatory and small nonambulatory household hospice environments. In addition, the following requirements shall apply.

3.2-4.2.4.1 The personal laundry facility shall be provided to handle, clean, and store linen according to acceptable methods of infection control as documented in the facility infection control risk assessment.

3.2-4.2.4.2 The personal laundry facility shall have separated clean and soiled areas to limit cross-contamination.

3.2-4.2.4.3 The personal laundry facility shall be ventilated directly to the outdoors.

3.2-4.2.4.4 Where commercial soap dispensers are used, the personal laundry room shall be sized to accommodate this additional equipment.

3.2-5 Building Support Facilities

The requirements in Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) shall apply.

3.2-6 Public and Administrative Areas

3.2-6.1 General. The requirements in Section 2.1-6 (Public and Administrative Areas) shall be required except for Section 2.1-6.2.1 (Vehicular Drop-Off and Pedestrian Entrance) and as amended in this section.

3.2-6.2 Public Areas

3.2-6.2.1 Reserved

3.2-6.2.2-Lobby-Entrance and Reception

~~Where a central lobby is provided, see Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas) for requirements.~~

An entrance and reception area shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Entrance and Reception).

3.2-6.3 Administrative Areas

3.2-6.3.1 Office and Conference Space

3.2-6.3.1.1 Office and conference spaces that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.3.1 (Office and Conference Space) shall be provided as amended in this section.

3.2-6.3.1.2 Where hospice services are provided in another health care setting, individual offices and conference spaces shall be permitted to be included in or shared with other office suites.

3.2-7 Design and Construction Requirements

3.2-7.1 Building Codes and Standards

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

3.2-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

3.2-7.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.1 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings—General) shall apply.

3.2-7.2.2 Architectural Details

Architectural details shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2 (Architectural Details) in addition to those in this section.

3.2-7.2.2.1 – 3.2-7.2.2.2 Reserved

3.2-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware

(1) Door type

(a) All doors between corridors, rooms, or areas subject to occupancy shall be of the swing type or shall be sliding doors.

(b) Manual or automatic sliding doors shall be permitted where their use does not compromise fire and other emergency egress requirements.

(2) – (3) Reserved

(4) Door hardware

(a) Sliding doors shall not have floor tracks.

(b) In shared hospice patient bathrooms, use of privacy locks with emergency access release shall be permitted.

(5) Doors for patient bathing/toilet facilities. Doors to all rooms containing bathtubs, showers, and toilets for hospice patient use shall be hinged, sliding, or folding.

3.2-7.2.2.4 – 3.2-7.2.2.9 Reserved

3.2-7.2.2.10 Handrails and lean rails. Handrails or lean rails shall be provided on both sides of public corridors.

3.2-7.2.3 Surfaces

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) shall apply.

3.2-7.2.4 Furnishings

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.4 (Furnishings) shall apply.

3.2-8 Building Systems

3.2-8.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) shall apply.

3.2-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

3.2-8.2.1 General

3.2-8.2.1.1 Application. HVAC systems that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided for hospice facilities.

3.2-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning. Ventilation and space conditioning systems shall meet requirements of a Level 1 ventilation and space conditioning system as defined in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (3) (Ventilation and space conditioning).

3.2-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

3.2-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

3.2-8.2.3.1 Fuel-fired equipment rooms. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.1 (Fuel-fired equipment rooms) shall apply.

3.2-8.2.3.2 Areas of refuge. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.2 (Areas of refuge) shall apply.

3.2-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

3.2-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

3.2-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

3.2-8.2.6.1 Filter efficiencies

- (1) For centralized recirculated systems, see Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for required filter efficiencies.
 - (a) Each filter bank with an efficiency greater than MERV 12 shall be provided with an installed, readily accessible manometer or differential pressure-measuring device that provides a reading of differential static pressure across the filter to indicate when the filter needs to be replaced.
 - (b) All air provided to a space by centralized recirculated systems shall be filtered.
- (2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:
 - (a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.
 - (b) Serve only a single space.
 - (c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

3.2-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

- (1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.
- (2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

3.2-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

3.2-8.2.7.1 General. ~~See Section 3.1-8.2 (Nursing Homes—Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning Systems) and~~ Table 9-1 (Design Parameters for Residential Health, Care, and Support-Specific Spaces) in Part 6 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for additional requirements.

3.2-8.2.7.2 Temperature control. The requirements of Section 2.1-8.2.7.2 (Temperature control) shall apply.

3.2-8.3 Electrical Systems

Electrical systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.3 (Electrical Systems) shall be provided.

3.2-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) shall be provided.

3.2-8.5 Communications Systems

Communications systems meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications systems) shall be provided.

3.2-8.5.1 General

~~See Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications Systems—General) for requirements.~~

~~3.2-8.5.2 Call System~~

~~3.2-8.5.2.1 General. A nurse/staff call system shall be provided that meets the requirements in Section 3.1-8.5.2 (Nursing Homes—Call System) as amended in this section.~~

~~3.2-8.5.2.2 The nurse/staff call system shall be capable of activation/operation from hospice patient toilets, bedrooms, and bathing areas.~~

~~3.2-8.5.2.3 The signal shall be transmitted to on-duty staff through fixed locations and/or hospice patient wearable devices.~~

~~3.2-8.5.3 Telecommunications Systems~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.3 (Telecommunications Systems) for requirements.~~

~~3.2-8.5.4 Grounding for Telecommunications Spaces~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.4 (Grounding for Telecommunications Spaces) for requirements.~~

~~3.2-8.5.5 Cabling Pathways and Raceway Requirements~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.5 (Cabling Pathways and Raceway Requirements) for requirements.~~

3.2-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

Electronic safety and security systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall be provided.

3.2-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

See Section 3.1-8.7 (Nursing Homes—Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems) for requirements.

3.2-8.8 Elevator Systems

3.2-8.8.1 General

3.2-8.8.1.1 Buildings having resident-use areas on more than one floor shall have electric or hydraulic elevators.

3.2-8.8.1.2 Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems).

4.1 Specific Requirements for Assisted Living Settings

4.1-1 General

4.1-1.1 Application

4.1-1.1.1 General

This chapter shall apply to assisted living settings.

4.1-1.1.1.1 Assisted living settings shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

4.1-1.1.1.2 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to assisted living settings when cross-referenced in this chapter.

4.1-1.1.2 Design Criteria

4.1-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved Sustainable design. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.~~

4.1-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral or mental health issues~~, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

4.1-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

4.1-1.1.2.4 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care. If the care population will include individuals receiving palliative care, see Section 2.1-2.1.2.4 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care) for requirements.

4.1-1.2 Functional Program

A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

~~4.1-1.2.1~~—4.1-1.2.2 Reserved **General**

~~4.1-1.2.1.1 See Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program) for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

~~4.1-1.2.1.2 The owner/operator shall provide a functional program that:~~

~~(1) Defines the scope and scale of the project, including the care model.~~

~~(2) Identifies resident needs.~~

~~(3) Facilitates the application of licensure and occupancy approvals by the authority having jurisdiction.~~

~~(4) Addresses applicable provisions of the *Guidelines for Design and Construction of Residential Health, Care, and Support Facilities*.~~

4.1-1.2.3 Shared Services

The requirements in Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared Services) shall apply.

4.1-1.3 Site

4.1-1.3.1 – 4.1-1.3.3 Reserved

4.1-1.3.4 Parking

Parking for assisted living settings shall meet the requirements in Section 1.3-3.3 (Parking) in addition to those in this section:

4.1-1.3.4.1 The total number of parking spaces to be provided shall be based on local requirements as well as functional need of the population to be served.

4.1-1.3.4.2 When a project includes sharing or purchasing services, modifications in parking requirements shall be permitted. See Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared Services).

4.1-1.4 ~~Reserved~~ Safety Risk Assessment

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

4.1-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

4.1-1.5.1 General

See sections 1.2-1.3 (Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) for requirements.

4.1-1.5.2 Flexibility

Assisted living facilities shall be designed to provide flexibility to meet the changing physical, medical, and psychological needs of residents.

4.1-1.5.3 Supportive Environment

See sections 1.2-5.1.3 (Planning Considerations for Resident Quality of Life) and 1.2-6.7 (Planning Considerations for Inclusive Environments) for requirements.

4.1-1.5.4 Barrier-Free Environment

The requirements in sections 1.2-6.7 (Planning Considerations for Inclusive Environments) and 1.2-6.7.3 (Barrier-Free Design) shall apply. ~~physical environment shall be designed to eliminate as many barriers as possible to effective access and use of the space, services, equipment, and utilities appropriate for daily living.~~

4.1-2 Resident Areas

4.1-2.1 General

4.1-2.1.1 Application

Resident areas in assisted living settings shall meet minimum design requirements described in this section.

4.1-2.1.2 Facility Layout

4.1-2.1.2.1 Areas for the care and treatment of individuals not residing in the facility shall not interfere with or infringe on the living space of residents.

4.1-2.1.2.2 Facility layout shall reflect the care model and related staffing for one of the following:

- (1) Residential model
- (2) Household model
- (3) Apartment-style community

4.1-2.2 Resident Unit or Private Living Area

The resident unit shall meet the requirements of Section 2.1-2.2 (Resident Unit or Resident Living Area), except as modified in this section.

4.1-2.2.1 General

4.1-2.2.1.1 **Resident room or apartment size.** Resident rooms or apartments shall be provided that are sized to:

- (1) Allow for sleeping.
- (2) Afford privacy.
- (3) Provide access to furniture and belongings.
- (4) Accommodate the care and treatment provided to residents.

~~4.1-2.2.1.2 Resident telephone access. See Section 2.1-2.2.1.4 (Resident telephone access) for requirements.~~

4.1-2.2.2 Resident Room or Apartment

4.1-2.2.2.1 **Capacity:** ~~Maximum room or apartment capacity shall be two residents.~~

(1) Maximum capacity for non-apartment style facilities shall be as follows:

(a) Single-resident room. A minimum of 80 percent of residents shall be housed in single-resident rooms unless the necessity for a double-resident room has been demonstrated. A smaller percentage of single-resident rooms shall be permitted when approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

(b) Double-resident room. A maximum of 20 percent of residents shall be permitted to reside in double-resident rooms (companion rooms).

(2) Maximum capacity in apartment-style facilities shall be two residents.

4.1-2.2.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Area-~~Room~~-size

(a) Single-resident room. Where a single-resident room is provided it shall meet the following requirements:

(i) Minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters)

(ii) Minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters)

(b) Double-resident room. Where a double-resident room is provided, it shall meet the following requirement:

(i) Minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.4 square meters) per resident bed

(ca) Resident room size (area and dimensions) shall permit the resident to move about the room with the assistance of a resident-operated mobility device, allowing access to at least one side of a bed, window, closet or wardrobe, chair, dresser, and nightstand.

(cb) Room size and configuration shall give residents options for bed location.

(2) Clearances

(a) The clearances in Section 2.1-2.2.2.2 (2) (Resident Room: Space requirements—Clearances) shall be provided.

(b) Where a lift will be used to transfer residents, a transfer side clearance of 48 inches (1.22 meters) between the bed and any wall or fixed obstruction on the transfer side of the bed shall be provided.

(3) Resident room or apartment layout

(a) Resident rooms in an apartment shall be permitted to have access to other rooms in the apartment.

(b) Resident rooms in residential or household settings shall not be permitted to serve as passageways, corridors, or access routes to other bedrooms or shared living spaces.

(c) Direct access shall be provided from the room entry to the resident bed, toilet room, closet or wardrobe, and window without traveling through the clear floor area of another resident.

~~(4)~~ Resident room accommodations

(a) Each resident shall be provided with an individual wardrobe or closet.

(b) Separate, enclosed storage in the resident room shall be provided for each resident.

~~(5)~~ Resident apartment accommodations. Where cooking will be permitted in the resident room or apartment, the following requirements shall be met:

(a) The cooking area shall be equipped with a dedicated sink and cooking and refrigeration appliances.

(b) Cooking equipment shutoffs shall be provided.

(6) Each resident unit or apartment shall be equipped to accommodate a television.

4.1-2.2.2.3 Windows

- (1) Windows shall be provided in all sleeping areas.
- (2) The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows) shall apply.

4.1-2.2.2.4 Resident privacy

- (1) Visual privacy shall be provided for each resident in multiple-resident rooms.
- (2) Design for privacy shall not restrict resident access to the toilet, room entrance, window, or other shared common areas in the resident room.

4.1-2.2.2.5 Handwashing station. Where a handwashing station is provided, see Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.

4.1-2.2.2.6 ~~Reserved~~ Resident toilet room

- (1) In residential model assisted living, a minimum of one readily accessible toilet room meeting the requirements of 2.1-2.8.6 (Shared Toilet Rooms) shall be provided for every four residents or major fraction thereof not otherwise served by a toilet room with direct access from a resident room.
- (2) In household and apartment-style settings, each resident shall have access to a toilet room meeting the requirements of 2.1-2.8.6 (Shared Toilet Rooms) without entering a public corridor.
- (3) Where toilet rooms are provided with direct access only to a resident room or apartment the following requirements shall apply:
 - (a) The toilet room shall serve no more than two residents.
 - (b) Private individual storage for the personal effects of each resident shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins).
 - (c) Where provided, a bathtub or shower shall comply with a bathtub or shower meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers).

4.1-2.2.2.7 Resident bathroom

- (1) Residential model
 - (a) In a residential model assisted living, a minimum of one readily accessible bathroom shall be provided for every six residents or major fraction thereof not otherwise served by a bathroom with direct access to a resident room.
 - (b) The bathroom shall contain the following:
 - (i) Toilet
 - (ii) Handwashing station meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations)
 - (iii) Private individual storage for the personal effects of each resident meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins)
 - (iv) Bathtub or shower. The requirements of Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers) shall apply.

(v) Where the bathroom is shared, privacy locks shall be permitted with provisions for emergency access.

(vi) Each toilet in a bathroom without direct access to a resident room shall be permitted to be used to satisfy the requirements of Section 4.1-2.2.8.7 (Resident Room Requirements for New Construction—Resident bathroom) as amended in this section.

~~The resident bathroom shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-2.2.2.7 (Nursing Homes: Resident Room Requirements for New Construction—Resident bathroom) as amended in this section.~~

- (2) In household and apartment-style community settings, each resident shall have access to a bathroom without entering a public corridor.
- (3) Private individual storage for the personal effects of each resident shall be provided. See Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins) for requirements.
- (4) A shower that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free Accessible showers) shall be provided.
- (5) Where the bathroom is shared, privacy locks shall be permitted with provisions for emergency access.

4.1-2.2.3 —~~4.1-2.2.4~~ Reserved

4.1-2.2.4 ~~1.1.2.1~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size

If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply.

4.1-2.2.5 Special Care Resident Rooms

4.1-2.2.5.1 Airborne infection isolation (AII) room. Where the need for an AII room is identified by the ICRA, an AII room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.5.1 (Airborne infection isolation room) shall be provided.

4.1-2.2.5.2 – 4.1-2.2.5.3 Reserved

4.1-2.2.5.4 Quiet room. Where a quiet room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.5.4 (Quiet room).

4.1-2.2.6 Reserved

4.1-2.2.7 Peritoneal Dialysis

Where residents self-perform or receive peritoneal dialysis, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.7 (Peritoneal Dialysis) shall apply, except for Section 2.1-2.2.7.2 (1) (Capacity) when the room is shared by a companion or partner.

4.1-2.2.8 Support Areas for the Resident Unit or Apartments

4.1-2.2.8.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.8 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

4.1-2.2.8.2 Staff work area

- (1) A staff work area shall be provided where the need is identified during the planning phase.

(2) Lockable storage shall be provided for resident records.

4.1-2.2.8.3 – 4.1-2.2.8.7 Reserved

4.1-2.2.8.8 Medication distribution and storage locations. The requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations) shall apply.

4.1-2.2.8.9 Central bathing or spa room or area

(1) General. Where a central bathing or spa room or area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section and the requirements in sections 2.1-2.8.9.3 (Central Bathing Room—Toilet facilities) and 2.1-2.8.9.4 (Central Bathing Room—Grooming facilities).

(2) Number

(a) ~~At least~~ Where a shower is not provided in the resident bathroom, a minimum of one central bathing room shall be provided per floor or unit that is sized to permit assisted bathing in a bathtub, spa-tub or shower., ~~or shower shall be provided for resident use.~~

(b) A minimum of one bathtub or shower shall be provided for every 20 residents, or major fraction thereof, not otherwise served by bathing facilities in resident bathrooms. ~~Additional central bathing facilities shall be based on the needs of the care population.~~

(3) Space requirements. Bathing fixtures shall be located in individual rooms or enclosures that provide the following:

(a) Space for private use of the bathing fixture

(b) Space for assisted use of the bathing fixture

(c) Space for drying and dressing

(4) Shower. Where a shower is included in the bathing or spa room or area, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers) for requirements.

4.1-2.2.8.10 Personal services (hair salon/spa) areas

(1) Personal services areas shall be permitted to be unisex and located adjacent to central resident activity areas as long as that location preserves resident dignity.

(2) Where personal services are offered, facilities and equipment for resident hair care and grooming shall be provided.

(3) Toilet facilities shall be located adjacent or readily accessible to the hair salon and grooming area.

4.1-2.2.8.11 Clean workroom and clean supply room:

(1) A minimum of one clean workroom supply room shall be provided for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean materials. ~~meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-4.5 (Clean Workroom and Clean Supply Room).~~

(2) Where a clean supply room is provided for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean materials, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-~~4.5 3-8-11~~ (Clean Workroom and ~~or~~ Clean Supply Room).

4.1-2.2.8.12 Soiled holding room. A [minimum of one soiled holding room shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4](#) ~~for storage and holding as part of a system for collection of soiled materials. See Section 2.1-3.8.12~~ (Soiled Workroom ~~or~~ [and](#) Soiled Holding Room) ~~for requirements.~~

4.1-2.2.8.13 Equipment and supply storage. See Section 2.1-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

- (1) Supply storage. Storage space for supplies and recreation items shall be immediately accessible to support activities and recreation offered.
- (2) Storage for resident needs. Storage space for resident equipment and supplies shall be immediately accessible to support services offered.

4.1-2.2.8.14 ~~Reserved~~ Environmental services room. A [minimum of one environmental services room shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.14 \(Environmental Services Room\).](#)

4.1-2.2.8.15 Personal laundry facilities

- (1) Provision of decentralized facilities for washing and drying personal laundry shall be permitted when the care model supports this approach for small groups of residents.
- (2) Where personal laundry facilities are provided, see Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) for requirements.
- (3) Personal laundry facilities shall be permitted to be shared with the following:
 - (a) Clean workroom or clean supply room. See Section 2.1-4.5 (Clean Workroom and Clean Supply Room).
 - (b) Soiled workroom or soiled holding room. See Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom and Soiled Holding Room).

4.1-2.2.9 Support Areas for Staff

4.1-2.2.9.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

4.1-2.2.9.2 Toilet rooms. Toilet rooms shall be permitted to be shared by the public, staff, and residents.

4.1-2.2.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors

4.1-2.2.10.1 Community areas. Community areas for family and visitors shall be provided based on the care model.

4.1-2.2.10.2 Overnight guest accommodations

- (1) Space for sleeping accommodations for overnight guests shall be provided in household and apartment-style community assisted living settings.
- (2) Accommodations provided for overnight guests shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.10.2 (Overnight Guest Accommodations).

4.1-2.2.10.3 Pet accommodations. See Section 2.1-2.10.3 (Pet Accommodations) for requirements.

4.1-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

4.1-2.3.1 General

The requirements in this Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) shall apply.

4.1-2.3.2 Dining ~~Areas~~ ~~Facilities~~

4.1-2.3.2.1 General. Space for dining shall be provided separate from social areas.

4.1-2.3.2.2 Space requirements. A minimum of 25 square feet per resident shall be provided for new construction.

~~(1) Space provided for resident dining shall allow residents, including those using wheelchairs and resident-operated mobility devices, to access and leave their tables without disturbing other residents.~~

~~(2) Clear and unobstructed circulation paths for servers and food carts shall be provided.~~

~~(3) Clear and unobstructed circulation paths for resident-operated mobility devices shall be provided.~~

~~(4) Space shall be provided for staff to help residents who require assistance with eating.~~

~~4.1-2.3.2.3 Provision of separate satellite dining areas immediately accessible to living areas shall be permitted to accommodate less densely populated groups of residents and to make dining areas easily accessible to residents.~~

4.1-2.3.3 Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas

4.1-2.3.3.1 Recreation, lounge, and activity areas shall accommodate both group and individual activities.

4.1-2.3.3.2 Space requirements. Recreation, lounge, and activity areas shall provide the following:

(1) Space for planned resident activities

(2) Areas sufficient in number and configuration to accommodate the following:

(a) Gatherings of resident groups of various sizes

(b) Simultaneous occurrence of separate and distinct activities

(c) Simultaneous dining and recreational activities

4.1-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

~~4.1-2.3.4.1~~ Outdoor activity areas shall be provided for residents, visitors, and staff meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas).

~~4.1-2.3.4.2 See Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas) for additional requirements and information.~~

4.1-2.3.5 – 4.1-2.3.7 Reserved

4.1-2.3.8 Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

Toilet facilities that accommodate resident-operated mobility devices shall be readily accessible to all dining, recreation, lounge, and activity locations.

4.1-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

Where diagnostic and treatment areas are required for the resident care population or as part of community-based services, the requirements in Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas) shall apply.

4.1-4 Resident Support Facilities

4.1-4.1 Food Service Facilities

4.1-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the assisted living setting shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

4.1-4.1.2 Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

4.1-4.1.2.1 Commercial kitchen

4.1-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

4.1-4.1.2.3 Household kitchen

4.1-4.1.2.4 Social activity kitchen

4.1-4.1.2.5 Reserved

4.1-4.1.2.6 Warming/serving kitchen

4.1-4.2 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

~~Linen and laundry service facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-4.2 (Nursing Homes—Linen and Laundry Service Facilities).~~

4.1-4.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Linen and Laundry Service Facilities) shall apply as amended in this section.

4.1-4.2.2 On-Site Commercial Laundry

Where linen is processed on-site in a commercial laundry, the requirements of Section 2.1-4.2.2 (On-Site Linen Processing Facilities) shall apply.

4.1-4.2.3 Off-Site Commercial Laundry

Where linen is processed off-site, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2.3 (Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Linen Processing) shall apply.

4.1-4.2.4 Personal Laundry

4.1-4.2.4.1 Linen shall be permitted to be processed on-site in a personal laundry facility meeting the requirements of 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) as amended in this section.

4.1-4.2.4.2 Where washers and dryers are provided in each individual apartment in apartment style assisted living, no other laundry facilities are required for the processing of personal laundry.

4.1-5 Building Support Facilities

See Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) for requirements.

4.1-6 Public and Administrative Areas

4.1-6.1 General

Assisted living settings shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-6 (Nursing Homes—Public and Administrative Areas) as amended in this section.

4.1-6.2 Public Areas

4.1-6.2.1 Reserved

4.1-6.2.2 ~~Lobby~~ Entrance and Reception

~~Where a lobby is provided, see Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Lobby) for requirements.~~ An entrance and reception area shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Entrance and Reception).

4.1-7 Design and Construction Requirements

4.1-7.1 Building Codes and Standards

~~4.1-7.1.1 A code compliant, safe, and accessible environment shall be provided.~~

~~4.1-7.1.2~~ See The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

4.1-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

4.1-7.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.1 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings—General) shall apply.

4.1-7.2.2 Architectural Details

Architectural details shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2 (Architectural Details) in addition to those in this section.

4.1-7.2.2.1 – 4.1-7.2.2.2 Reserved

4.1-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware

(1) Door type. Manual or automatic sliding doors shall be permitted where use does not compromise fire and other emergency egress requirements.

(2) – (3) Reserved

(4) Door hardware. Resident units shall be lockable by occupants.

(a) Locking hardware shall enable occupants to gain egress from within by means of a simple operation.

(b) All residential units shall be accessible by staff or safety personnel.

(5) Doors for resident bathing/toilet facilities. Rooms that contain bathtubs, showers, or toilets for resident use shall be hinged, sliding, or folding.

4.1-7.2.2.4 Reserved

4.1-7.2.2.5 Windows

4.1-7.2.2.6 – 4.1-7.2.2.9 Reserved

4.1-7.2.2.10 Handrails and lean rails

(1) Handrails or lean rails shall be provided in household and apartment-style community settings.

(2) A handrail or lean rail shall be provided in public corridors.

4.1-7.2.3 Surfaces

The requirements in Section 3.1-7.2.3 (Nursing Homes—Surfaces) shall apply.

4.1-7.2.4 Furnishings

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.4 (Furnishings) shall apply.

4.1-8 Building Systems

4.1-8.1 General

See Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) for requirements.

4.1-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

4.1-8.2.1 General

4.1-8.2.1.1 Application

(1) For residential and household assisted living settings, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements.

(2) For apartment-style community assisted living settings, see the following standards:

(a) ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality* for community areas

(b) ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements for dwelling units or apartments

4.1-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) shall apply.

4.1-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

4.1-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3 (HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations) shall apply.

4.1-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

4.1-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

4.1-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

4.1-8.2.6.1 Filter efficiencies

- (1) For centralized recirculated systems, MERV 8 shall be the minimum filter efficiency for the first filter bank. There is no minimum filter efficiency requirement for the second filter bank.
- (2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:
 - (a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.
 - (b) Serve only a single space.
 - (c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

4.1-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

- (1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.
- (2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

4.1-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

4.1-8.2.7.1 General. See Section 2.1-8.2.7 (Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

4.1-8.2.7.2 Heating systems. Assisted living settings shall have a permanently installed heating system capable of maintaining an interior minimum temperature of 72°F (22°C) under heating design temperatures.

4.1-8.2.7.3 Cooling systems. Assisted living settings shall be configured and equipped with a cooling system capable of maintaining an interior maximum temperature of 75°F (24°C) under cooling design temperatures.

4.1-8.3 Electrical Systems

4.1-8.3.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.1 (Electrical Systems—General) shall apply.

4.1-8.3.2 Power-Generating and Power-Storing Equipment

4.1-8.3.2.1 Essential electrical system

(1) Applicable standards for care models

(a) Apartment-style community assisted living settings or sections thereof shall have essential electrical systems as required in:

(i) NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*

(ii) NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*

(b) For residential and household settings, local codes shall dictate minimum requirements for the essential electrical system.

(c) For all assisted living settings, local codes and care model needs shall dictate emergency lighting requirements.

(2) Where residents on life support equipment are served in the assisted living setting, essential electrical power shall be provided to the life support equipment.

(3) Where fuel for electricity generation is stored on-site, the following requirements shall be met:

(a) Storage capacity shall permit continuous operation for a minimum of 24 hours.

(b) Fuel storage for electricity generation shall be separate from heating fuel storage.

(c) Where heating fuel will be used for diesel generators after the required 24-hour supply of diesel fuel has been exhausted, positive valving and filtration shall be provided to avoid entry of water and/or contaminants into the storage tank.

4.1-8.3.2.2 Generators. Where generators are used for an assisted living setting, exhaust systems (including mufflers and vibration isolators) for internal combustion engines shall be located, designed, and installed to minimize noise.

4.1-8.3.3 Electrical Receptacles

4.1-8.3.3.1 The requirements in Section [2.1-8.3.4](#) ~~3-1-8.3.3 (Nursing Homes—~~Electrical Receptacles) shall apply.

4.1-8.3.3.2 [A GFCI duplex receptacle shall be provided in each toilet room.](#)

4.1-8.3.3.3 [The requirements in Table 2.1-1 \(Required Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces\) shall apply.](#)

4.1-8.3.4 Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas

Where ventilators are used in the facility, see Section 2.1-8.3.5 (Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas) for requirements.

4.1-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) shall be provided.

4.1-8.4.2 Portable Hydrotherapy Whirlpools

Where portable hydrotherapy whirlpools are used in an assisted living setting, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.6 (Portable hydrotherapy whirlpools) shall apply.

4.1-8.5 Communications Systems

4.1-8.5.1 General

Communications systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.1 (Communication Systems) as amended in this section.

~~4.1-8.5.1.1 Application.~~

~~The requirements in this section shall apply to the following systems based on the care model and the needs of residents:~~

- ~~(1) Call system~~
- ~~(2) Telecommunications system~~
- ~~(3) Information system~~

~~4.1-8.5.1.2 Communication systems equipment requirements~~

- ~~(1) Each resident unit or apartment shall be equipped for a television and telephone.~~
- ~~(2) See Section 2.1-8.5.1.2 (Communication systems equipment requirements) for additional requirements.~~

4.1-8.5.2 Call System

~~4.1-8.5.2.1 General.~~ Where call systems are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.2 (Call System). ~~the following requirements shall be met:~~

- ~~(1) The system shall be capable of activation/operation from resident toilets, bedrooms, and bathing areas.~~
- ~~(2) Wireless systems
 - ~~(a) Use of alternative technologies, including wireless systems, shall be permitted.~~
 - ~~(b) Where wireless systems are used, consideration shall be given to electromagnetic compatibility between internal and external sources.~~~~
- ~~(3) Call systems shall comply with UL Standard 2560: *Emergency Call Systems for Assisted Living and Independent Living Facilities.*~~

~~4.1-8.5.2.2 Resident bed call stations~~

4.1 Specific Requirements for Assisted Living Settings

~~(1) Each bed location shall be provided with a resident bed station with call device accessible to the resident.~~

~~(a) One resident bed call station shall be permitted to serve two beds.~~

~~(b) Use of wearable devices shall be permitted.~~

~~(2) The resident bed station shall be designed so that when a call is activated, the signal initiated is distinct to that resident bed station device and can be turned off only at the activated device.~~

~~**4.1-8.5.2.3 Emergency bath and shower station.** See Section 3.1-8.5.2.3 (Nursing Homes—Emergency bath and shower station) for requirements.~~

~~**4.1-8.5.2.4 Common area call stations.** In apartment style community settings, a call station shall be provided in each resident dining, recreation, and activity area and hair salon.~~

~~**4.1-8.5.2.5 Call system notification.** The signal from any call device shall activate at the staff work area and/or wearable device carried by staff.~~

~~4.1-8.5.3 Telecommunications Systems~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.3 (Telecommunications Systems) for requirements.~~

~~4.1-8.5.4 Grounding for Telecommunications Spaces~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.4 (Grounding for Telecommunications Spaces) for requirements.~~

~~4.1-8.5.5 Cabling Pathways and Raceway Requirements~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.5 (Cabling Pathways and Raceway Requirements) for requirements.~~

4.1-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

4.1-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

4.1-8.7.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.1 (Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems—General) shall apply.

4.1-8.7.2 Daylighting Systems in Resident Living Areas

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.2 (Daylighting Systems in Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas) shall apply.

4.1-8.7.3 Artificial Lighting Systems

4.1-8.7.3.1 Light fixtures. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.3.1 (Artificial Lighting Systems—Light fixtures) shall apply.

4.1-8.7.3.2 Lighting requirements for specific locations

(1) Resident unit corridors

4.1 Specific Requirements for Assisted Living Settings

- (a) Resident unit corridors shall have general illumination with provisions for reducing light levels at night.
 - (b) Corridors and common areas used by residents shall have even light distribution to avoid glare, shadows, and scalloped lighting effects.
- (2) Resident rooms, bedrooms, and bathrooms
- (a) Task light controls shall be readily accessible to residents.
 - (b) Where night-lighting is provided, it shall be located in the pathway to and from the bedside and the bathroom.
 - (i) Night-lighting shall be mounted no higher than 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) above the floor.
 - (ii) Night-lighting shall be controlled separately from ambient lighting.
 - (iii) Night-lighting shall have a low light level.
 - (iv) Because night-lights may disturb resident sleep even when properly specified, located, and operated, owner/operator shall be permitted to use portable light sources or switched night-lights for added control of this light source.

4.1-8.8 Elevator Systems

4.1-8.8.1 General

4.1-8.8.1.1 Application. All buildings [with 17 or more residents](#) having resident use areas on more than one floor shall have electric or hydraulic elevator(s).

4.1-8.8.1.2 Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems). ~~for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

4.1-8.8.1.2 Number. ~~Engineered traffic studies are recommended, but in their absence the following guidelines for minimum number of elevators shall apply:~~

- ~~(1) At least two elevators shall be installed where 60 to 200 residents are living or receiving care or support services on floors other than the main entrance floor.~~
- ~~(2) At least three elevators shall be installed where 201 to 350 residents are living or receiving care or support services on floors other than the main entrance floor.~~
- ~~(3) For facilities with more than 350 residents living or receiving care or support services above the main entrance floor, the number of elevators shall be determined from a study of the facility plan and from the estimated vertical transportation requirements.~~

4.1-8.8.2 Dimensions and Clearances

4.1-8.8.2.1 ~~In household and apartment style community settings, the elevator shall be sized to accommodate a gurney and/or medical carts and resident operated mobility devices.~~

4.1-8.8.2.2 ~~Elevator car doors shall have a clear opening of no less than 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters).~~

4.1-8.8.2.3 ~~Other elevators required for passenger service shall be sized to accommodate resident-operated mobility devices.~~

4.1-8.8.3 Handrails

~~Elevator cars shall have handrails on all sides without an entrance door. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.10 (Handrails and lean rails) for additional requirements.~~

DRAFT

4.2 Specific Requirements for Independent Living Settings

[This chapter will no longer appear in the FGI Facility Code for Residential Care Support Settings.]

DRAFT

4.3 Specific Requirements for Long-Term Residential Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

4.3-1 General

4.3-1.1 Application

4.3-1.1.1 General

This chapter shall apply to long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facilities.

4.3-1.1.1.1 Long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facilities shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

4.3-1.1.1.2 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facilities when cross-referenced in this chapter.

4.3-1.1.1.3 Long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facilities shall be permitted to be freestanding facilities or distinct parts of another residential care or support facility.

4.3-1.1.2 Design Criteria

4.3-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved Sustainable design. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.~~

4.3-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues,~~ and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral or mental health issues,~~ or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues,~~ or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

4.3-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

4.3-1.1.2.4 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care. ~~If the care population will include individuals receiving~~ Where palliative care areas will be provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.4 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care) shall apply.

4.3-1.2 Functional Program

A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

4.3-1.2.1 – ~~4.3-1.2.2~~ Reserved **General**

~~4.3-1.2.1.1~~ ~~The requirements in Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program) shall apply in addition to those in this~~

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

~~section.~~

~~4.3-1.2.1.2 The owner/operator shall provide a functional program that:~~

- ~~(1) Defines the scope and scale of the long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facility (including the care model).~~
- ~~(2) Identifies resident needs.~~
- ~~(3) Facilitates the application of licensure and occupancy approval by the authority having jurisdiction.~~
- ~~(4) Addresses applicable provisions of the *Guidelines for Design and Construction of Residential Health, Care, and Support Facilities*.~~

~~4.3-1.2.2 Reserved~~

4.3-1.2.3 Shared Services

The requirements in Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared Services) shall apply.

4.3-1.3 Site

The requirements in Chapter 1.3 (Site) shall apply.

4.3-1.4 ~~Reserved~~ **Safety Risk Assessment**

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

4.3-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

4.3-1.5.1 General

See sections 1.2-1.3 (Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) for requirements.

4.3-1.5.2 Reserved

4.3-1.5.3 Supportive Environment

4.3-1.5.3.1 The facility design shall produce a supportive environment to:

- (1) Enhance and extend quality of life for residents.
- (2) Facilitate wayfinding.
- (3) Promote resident privacy and dignity.

4.3-1.5.3.2 The physical environment of the long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facility shall support the services and levels of care provided in the facility.

4.3-1.5.3.3 Long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facilities shall be designed and constructed to provide a supportive residential environment that is conducive to day-to-day community activities and responsibilities.

4.3-1.5.4 Barrier-Free Environment

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

The [requirements in sections 1.2-6.7 \(Planning Considerations for Inclusive Environments\) and 1.2-6.7.3 \(Barrier-Free Design\)](#) shall apply. ~~physical environment shall be designed to eliminate as many barriers as possible to effective access and use of the space, services, equipment, and utilities appropriate for daily living and treatment.~~

4.3-2 Resident Areas

4.3-2.1 General

4.3-2.1.1 Application

Resident areas in long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facilities shall meet the minimum design requirements described in this section.

4.3-2.1.2 Facility Layout

4.3-2.1.2.1 Areas for the care and treatment of individuals not residing in the facility shall not interfere with or infringe on the private living area of residents.

4.3-2.1.2.2 Facility layout shall reflect the therapeutic community care model and related staffing.

4.3-2.2 Resident Unit or Private Living Area

4.3-2.2.1 General

[The requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.1 \(Resident Unit or Resident Living Area—General\)](#) shall apply in addition to the requirements in this section.

4.3-2.2.1.1 Resident room size. Resident rooms shall be provided that are sized to:

- (1) ~~Allow for~~ [Support](#) sleeping.
- (2) Afford privacy.
- (3) Provide access to furniture and belongings.
- (4) Accommodate the care and treatment provided to residents.

~~**4.3-2.2.1.2 Resident telephone access.** See Section 2.1-2.2.1.4 (Resident telephone access) for requirements.~~

4.3-2.2.2 Resident Room

4.3-2.2.2.1 ~~Reserved~~ [Capacity](#)

(1) [Single-resident room. A minimum of 80 percent of residents shall be housed in single-resident rooms unless the necessity for a double-resident room has been demonstrated. A smaller percentage of single-resident rooms shall be permitted when approved by the authority having jurisdiction.](#)

(2) [Double-resident room. A maximum of 20 percent of residents shall be permitted to reside in double-resident rooms.](#)

4.3-2.2.2.2 Space requirements

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

(1) Area

(a) Single-resident room. Where a single-resident room is provided it shall meet the following requirements:

(i) Minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters)

(ii) Minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters)

(b) Multiple-resident room. Where a multiple-resident room is provided, it shall meet the following requirement:

(i) Minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.4 square meters) per resident bed

(c) Resident room size (area and dimensions) shall permit the resident to move about the room with the assistance of a resident-operated mobility device, allowing access to at least one side of a bed, window, closet or wardrobe, chair, dresser, and nightstand.

(2) Clearances. The clearances in Section 2.1-2.2.2.2 (2) (Resident Room: Space requirements—Clearances) shall be provided.

(3) Resident room layout. Resident rooms shall not be permitted to serve as passageways, corridors, or access routes to other resident rooms.

~~(4)~~ Resident room accommodations

(a) Each resident shall be provided with an individual wardrobe or closet.

(b) Separate, enclosed storage in the resident room shall be provided for each resident.

(c) Each resident unit or apartment shall be equipped to accommodate a television.

4.3-2.2.2.3 Windows. Windows shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows).

4.3-2.2.2.4 Reserved

4.3-2.2.2.5 Handwashing station. Where a handwashing station is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

4.3-2.2.2.6 ~~Reserved~~ Resident toilet room

(1) A minimum of one readily accessible toilet room meeting the requirements of 2.1-2.8.6 (Shared Toilet Room) shall be provided for every four residents or major fraction thereof not otherwise served by a toilet room with direct access to a resident room.

(2) Where toilet rooms are provided with direct access only to a resident room the following requirements shall apply:

(a) The toilet room shall serve no more than two residents.

(b) Private individual storage for the personal effects of each resident shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins).

(c) Where provided, a bathtub or shower shall comply with the requirements of Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2)

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

(Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers).

4.3-2.2.2.7 Resident bathroom. Each resident shall have access to a bathroom.

(1) A minimum of one readily accessible bathroom shall be provided for every six residents or major fraction thereof not otherwise served by a bathroom with direct access to a resident room.

(2) The bathroom shall contain the following:

(a) Toilet

(b) Handwashing station meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

(c) Private individual storage for the personal effects of each resident. See Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins) for requirements.

(d) Shower. See Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—~~Barrier-free~~ Accessible showers) for requirements.

(3) Where the bathroom is shared, privacy locks shall be permitted with provisions for emergency access.

(4) Each toilet in a bathroom without direct access to a resident room shall be permitted to be used to satisfy the requirements for Section 4.3-2.2.2.6 (Resident toilet room).

4.3-2.2.3 —~~4.3-2.2.4~~ Reserved

4.3-~~2.2.4~~ ~~1.1.2.2~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size

If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply.

4.3-2.2.5 Special Care Resident Rooms

4.3-2.2.5.1 – 4.3-2.2.5.3 Reserved

4.3-2.2.5.4 Quiet room. Where a quiet room is provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.5.4 (Quiet room) shall apply.

4.3-2.2.6 Reserved

4.3-2.2.7 ~~Reserved~~ Peritoneal Dialysis

Where residents self-perform or receive peritoneal dialysis, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.7 (Peritoneal Dialysis) shall apply, except for Section 2.1-2.2.7.2 (1) (Capacity) when the room is shared by a companion or care partner.

4.3-2.2.8 Support Areas for the Resident Unit or Private Living Areas

4.3-2.2.8.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.8.1 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

4.3-2.2.8.2 Staff work area. See Section 4.1-2.2.8.2 (Assisted Living Settings—Staff work area) for requirements.

4.3-2.2.8.3 – 4.3-2.2.8.7 Reserved

4.3-2.2.8.8 Medication distribution and storage locations

- (1) Security shall be provided for all medications.
- (2) See Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations) for additional requirements.

4.3-2.2.8.9 Central bathing or spa room. ~~See Section 4.1-2.2.8.9 (Assisted Living Settings—Central bathing or spa room or area) for requirements.~~

(1) General. Where a central bathing or spa room or area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section and the requirements in sections 2.1-2.8.9.3 (Central Bathing Room—Toilet facilities) and 2.1-2.8.9.4 (Central Bathing Room—Grooming facilities).

(2) Number

(a) At least one central bathtub, spa tub, or shower shall be provided for resident use.

(b) Additional central bathing facilities shall be based on the needs of the care population.

(3) Space requirements. Bathing fixtures shall be located in individual rooms or enclosures that provide the following

(a) Space for private use of the bathing fixture

(b) Space for drying and dressing

(4) Shower. Where a shower is provided in the bathing or spa room or area, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers).

4.3-2.2.8.10 Reserved

4.3-2.2.8.11 Clean workroom. Where the residential setting includes delivery of medical care, a clean workroom shall be provided for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean materials. See Section 2.1-4.5 (Clean Workroom ~~and~~ ~~or~~ Clean Supply Room) for requirements.

4.3-2.2.8.12 Soiled ~~holding room~~ ~~workroom~~. Where the residential setting includes delivery of medical care, a soiled ~~holding room~~ ~~workroom~~ shall be provided for storage and holding as part of a system for collection of soiled materials. See Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom ~~and~~ ~~or~~ Soiled Holding Room) for requirements.

4.3-2.2.8.13 Equipment and supply storage. See Section 2.1-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

- (1) Supply storage. Storage space for supplies and recreation items shall be immediately accessible and secured to support recreation and activities offered.
- (2) Storage for resident needs. Storage space for resident equipment and supplies shall be immediately accessible to support services offered and secured based on the care population.

4.3-2.2.8.14 ~~Reserved~~ Environmental Services Room. A minimum of one environmental services room shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.14 (Environmental Services Room).

4.3-2.2.8.15 Personal laundry facilities

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

- (1) Personal laundry facilities for residents to complete their own laundry shall be provided.
- (2) Equipment shall include washers and dryers based on the number of residents being served.
- (3) See Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) for additional requirements.

4.3-2.2.9 Support Areas for Staff

~~4.3-2.2.9.1 General.~~ Support areas for staff shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff). ~~in addition to those in this section.~~

~~4.3-2.2.9.2 Toilet rooms.~~ Toilet rooms shall be designated for visitors, staff, and residents based on the size of the facility and the total number of users.

4.3-2.2.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors

4.3-2.2.10.1 Community areas for family and visitors shall be provided based on the care model.

4.3-2.2.10.2 Community areas shall be able to be supervised as required by individual treatment plans.

4.3-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

4.3-2.3.1 General

See Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) for requirements.

4.3-2.3.2 Dining Areas ~~Facilities~~

4.3-2.3.2.1 Location. ~~General.~~ Space for communal dining shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General).

~~(1) Location. Provision of separate satellite dining areas immediately accessible to living areas shall be permitted if required where different care populations will be served.~~

~~(2) Natural light shall be provided in resident dining areas.~~

4.3-2.3.2.2 Space requirements. The requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2.2 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) shall be provided. ~~Clear and unobstructed circulation paths shall be provided for residents and food service staff based on the food delivery process used in the therapeutic community.~~

4.3-2.3.3 Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas

4.3-2.3.3.1 Recreation, lounge, and activity areas shall accommodate both group and individual activities and recreational opportunities.

4.3-2.3.3.2 Space requirements. Recreation, lounge, and activity areas shall provide the following:

- (1) Space for planned resident activities
- (2) Areas sufficient in number and configuration to accommodate the following:
 - (a) Gatherings of resident groups of various sizes
 - (b) Simultaneous occurrence of separate and distinct activities

4.3-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

Outdoor activity areas shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas).

4.3-2.3.5 – 4.3-2.3.7 Reserved

4.3-2.3.8 Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

Toilet facilities shall be readily accessible to all dining, recreation, and activity locations.

4.3-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

4.3-3.1 General

Where diagnostic and treatment areas are required for the resident care population or as part of community-based services, see Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas).

4.3-4 Resident Support Facilities

4.3-4.1 Food Service Facilities

4.3-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the long-term residential substance use disorder treatment facility shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

4.3-4.1.2 Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

4.3-4.1.2.1 Commercial kitchen

4.3-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

4.3-4.1.2.3 Household kitchen

4.3-4.1.2.4 Social activity kitchen

4.3-4.1.2.5 Reserved

4.3-4.1.2.6 Warming/serving kitchen

4.3-4.2 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

~~Linen and laundry service facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-4.2 (Nursing Homes—Linen and Laundry Service Facilities).~~

4.3-4.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Linen and Laundry Service Facilities) shall apply as amended in this section.

4.3-4.2.2 On-Site Linen Processing

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

4.3-4.2.2.1 Where linen is processed on-site in a commercial laundry, the requirements of Section 2.1-4.2.2 (On-Site Linen Processing Facilities) shall apply.

4.3-4.2.2.2 Linen shall be permitted to be processed on-site in a Personal Laundry Facility meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) in addition to the following requirements:

- (1) The facility shall handle, clean, and store linen according to acceptable methods of infection control as documented in the facility infection control risk assessment.
- (2) Separate clean and soiled functions shall be provided to limit cross-contamination.
- (3) Where commercial soap dispensers are used, the personal laundry room shall be sized to accommodate this additional equipment.

4.3-4.2.3 Off-Site Linen Processing

Where linen is processed off-site, the requirements of Section 2.1-4.2.3 (Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Linen Processing) shall apply.

4.3-5 Building Support Facilities

Where building support facilities are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5 (General Support Facilities) and the requirements in this section.

4.3-5.1 Reserved

4.3-5.2 Waste Management Facilities

Waste management requirements shall be scaled to the size and operational need of the substance use disorder long-term care residential facility.

4.3-6 Public and Administrative Areas

4.3-6.1 General

Public and administrative areas shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-6 (Nursing Homes—Public and Administrative Areas) as amended in this section.

4.3-6.2 Public Areas

4.3-6.2.1 Reserved

4.3-6.2.2 ~~Lobby~~ Entrance and Reception

~~Where a lobby is provided, see Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Lobby) for requirements.~~ An entrance and reception area shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Entrance and Reception).

4.3-6.3 Administrative Areas

~~Identification of required workspaces for in-house staff and contracted visiting staff, based on professional discipline, shall be taken into consideration when planning office space and work areas.~~

4.3-6.3.1 Workspaces

Workspaces for in-house staff and contracted visiting staff shall be provided based on professional discipline.

4.3-6.3.2 Planning documentation

Office spaces and work areas shall be documented in the functional program.

4.3-7 Design and Construction Requirements

4.3-7.1 Building Codes and Standards

~~4.3-7.1.1 A code compliant, safe, and accessible environment that shall be provided.~~

4.3-7.1.1~~2~~ The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

4.3-7.1.1~~3~~ A facility that seeks accreditation, certification, licensure, or other credentials shall comply with applicable design and construction standards.

~~4.3-7.1.4 Where institutional codes are required, the facility shall maintain the residential environment desired by residents.~~

4.3-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) shall apply.

4.3-8 Building Systems

4.3-8.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) shall apply.

4.3-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

4.3-8.2.1 General

4.3-8.2.1.1 Application. HVAC systems meeting the requirements in this section shall be provided for substance use disorder treatment facilities.

~~(1) For substance abuse treatment facilities with 16 or fewer residents, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements.~~

~~(2) For substance abuse treatment facilities with more than 16 residents, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality* for basic HVAC system requirements.~~

(1) For substance use disorder treatment facilities with 16 or fewer residents, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements.

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

- (2) For substance use disorder treatment facilities with more than 16 residents, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality* for basic HVAC system requirements.

4.3-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning-

(1) The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) shall apply in addition to those in this section. See for requirements-

(2) Ventilation and space conditioning systems shall meet the requirements of a Level 2 Ventilation and space conditioning system as defined in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2. (3) (Ventilation and space conditioning).

4.3-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

4.3-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3 (HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations) shall apply.

4.3-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

4.3-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

4.3-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

~~See Section 4.1-8.2.6 (Assisted Living Settings—HVAC Filters) for requirements.~~

4.3-8.2.6.1 Filter efficiencies

(1) For centralized recirculated systems, MERV 8 shall be the minimum filter efficiency for the first filter banks. There is no minimum filter efficiency requirement for the second filter bank.

(2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:

(a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.

(b) Serve only a single space.

(c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

4.3-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

(1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.

(2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

4.3-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

4.3-8.2.7.1 General. ~~The requirements in See Section 2.1-8.2.7 4.1-8.2.7 (Assisted Living Settings—Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) shall apply in addition to those in this section. for requirements.~~

4.3-8.2.7.2 Heating systems. Substance use disorder treatment facilities shall have a permanently installed heating system capable of maintaining an interior minimum temperature of 72°F (22°C) under heating design temperatures.

4.3-8.2.7.3 Cooling systems. Substance use disorder treatment facilities shall be configured and equipped with a cooling system capable of maintaining an interior maximum temperature of 75°F (24°C) under cooling design temperatures.

4.3-8.3 Electrical Systems

4.3-8.3.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.1 (Electrical Systems—General) shall apply.

4.3-8.3.2 Power-Generating and Power-Storing Equipment

Where generators are used, exhaust systems (including mufflers and vibration isolators) for internal combustion engines shall be located, designed, and installed to minimize noise.

4.3-8.3.3 Electrical Receptacles

4.3-8.3.3.1 General. Electrical receptacles shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.4 (Electrical Receptacles) and the requirements in this section.

4.3-8.3.3.2 Receptacles in resident rooms

- (1) Two duplex grounded receptacles, with one on each side of the planned bed location, shall be provided.
- (2) Where electric-powered beds will be used, an additional duplex receptacle shall be provided at the head of the bed.

4.3-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) shall be provided.

4.3-8.5 Communications Systems

~~See Section 4.2-8.5 (Independent Living Settings—Communications Systems) for requirements.~~

4.3-8.5.1 General

Communications systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.1 (Communications Systems) shall be provided as amended in this section.

4.3-8.5.2 Call System

Where call systems are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.2.1 (Call System).

4.3-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

4.3 Specific Requirements for Substance-Use Disorder Treatment Facilities

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

4.3-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

Daylighting and artificial lighting systems shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-8.7 (Nursing Homes—Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems).

4.3-8.8 Elevator Systems

4.3-8.8.1 General

4.3-8.8.1.1 All buildings with 17 or more residents having resident-use areas on more than one floor shall have electric or hydraulic elevators.

4.3-8.8.1.2 Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems).

~~4.3-8.8.1.1 Application. Where elevators are provided in large long-term substance abuse treatment settings, the requirements in this section shall be met.~~

~~4.3-8.8.1.2 Number. Engineered traffic studies are recommended, but in their absence the following guidelines for the minimum number of elevators shall apply:~~

- ~~(1) At least one elevator sized to accommodate a gurney and/or medical carts and resident-operated mobility device users shall be installed where residents are living or receiving care or support services on any floor other than the main entrance floor.~~
- ~~(2) At least two elevators shall be installed where 60 to 200 residents are living or receiving care or support services on floors other than the main entrance floor.~~
- ~~(3) At least three elevators shall be installed where 201 to 350 residents are living or receiving care or support services on floors other than the main entrance floor.~~
- ~~(4) For facilities with more than 350 residents living or receiving care or support services above the main entrance floor, the number of elevators shall be determined from a study of the facility plan and from the estimated vertical transportation requirements.~~

4.3-8.8.2 Dimensions and Clearances

~~Elevator car doors shall have a clear opening of no less than 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters).~~

4.3-8.8.3 Leveling Device

~~See Section 2.1-8.8.3 (Elevator Systems—Leveling Device) for requirements.~~

4.3-8.8.4 Installation and Testing

~~See Section 2.1-8.8.4 (Elevator Systems—Installation and Testing Standards) for requirements.~~

4.3-8.8.5 Handrails

~~Elevator cars shall have handrails on all sides without an entrance door. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.10 (Handrails and lean rails) for additional requirements.~~

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

4.4-1 General

4.4-1.1 Application

4.4-1.1.1 General

This chapter shall apply to residential settings for individuals with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities.

4.4-1.1.1.1 Settings for individuals with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

4.4-1.1.1.2 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to settings for individuals with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities when cross-referenced in this chapter.

4.4-1.1.2 Design Criteria

4.4-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved Sustainable design. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.~~

4.4-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, behavioral and mental health issues, and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, behavioral or mental health issues, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, behavioral and mental health issues, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

4.4-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

4.4-1.2 Functional Program

A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

~~4.4-1.2.1 General~~

~~4.4-1.2.1.1~~ The requirements in Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

~~4.4-1.2.1.2~~ The owner/operator shall provide a functional program that:

- ~~(1) Defines the scope and scale of the setting for individuals with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities (including the care model).~~

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

~~(2) Identifies resident needs.~~

~~(3) Facilitates the application of licensure and occupancy approval by the authority having jurisdiction.~~

~~(4) Addresses applicable provisions of the *Guidelines for Design and Construction of Residential Health, Care, and Support Facilities*.~~

4.4-1.2.1 – 4.4-1.2.2 Reserved

4.4-1.2.3 Shared Services

The requirements in Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared Services) shall apply.

4.4-1.3 Site

The requirements in Chapter 1.3 (Site) shall apply.

4.4-1.4 Reserved ~~Safety Risk Assessment~~

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

4.4-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

See Section 4.1-1.5 (Assisted Living Settings—Environment of Care Requirements) for requirements.

4.4-2 Resident Areas

4.4-2.1 General

4.4-2.1.1 Application

Resident areas in settings for individuals with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities shall meet the minimum design requirements described in this section.

4.4-2.1.2 Facility Layout

4.4-2.1.2.1 Areas for the care and treatment of individuals not residing in the facility shall not interfere with or infringe on the space of residents who live in the facility.

4.4-2.1.2.2 Facility layout shall reflect the care model and related staffing for one of the following:

- (1) Small model. ~~Four or fewer resident rooms shall be provided in a residentially scaled home with centralized services and bathing and support areas for residents and staff.~~
- (2) Medium model. ~~Five to 16 resident rooms shall be provided in a residentially scaled home that is freestanding or located in a larger community with centralized or decentralized services and bathing and support areas for residents and staff.~~
- (3) Large model. ~~Seventeen or more resident rooms shall be provided using a household model with centralized or decentralized services and bathing and support areas for residents and staff.~~

4.4-2.2 Resident Unit or Private Living Area

4.4-2.2.1 General

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

The requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.1 (Resident Unit or Resident Living Area—General) shall apply in addition to the requirements of this section.

4.4-2.2.1.1 Resident room size. Resident rooms shall be provided that are sized to:

- (1) Allow for sleeping.
- (2) Afford privacy.
- (3) Provide access to furniture and belongings.
- (4) Accommodate the care and treatment provided to residents.

~~4.4-2.2.1.2 Resident telephone access. See Section 2.1-2.2.1.4 (Resident telephone access) for requirements.~~

4.4-2.2.2 Resident Room

~~Resident rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 4.3-2.2.2 (Substance Abuse Facilities—Resident Room) and the requirements in this section.~~

4.4-2.2.2.1 Capacity

- (1) Single-resident room. A minimum of 80 percent of residents shall be housed in single-resident rooms unless the necessity for a double-resident room has been demonstrated. A smaller percentage of single-resident rooms shall be permitted when approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
- (2) Double-resident room. A maximum of 20 percent of residents shall be permitted to reside in double-resident rooms.

4.4-2.2.2.2 Space requirements

- (1) Area. The following requirements shall apply:
 - (a) Minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters)
 - (b) Minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.04 meters)
 - (c) Resident room size (area and dimensions) shall permit the resident to move about the room with the assistance of a resident-operated mobility device, allowing access to at least one side of a bed, window, closet or wardrobe, chair, dresser, and nightstand.
- (2) Clearances. The requirements in sections 2.1-2.2.2.2 (2) (Resident Room: Space requirements—Clearances) and 2.1-2.2.2.2 (3) (Clear circulation pathway) shall apply.
- (3) Resident room layout. Resident rooms shall not be permitted to serve as passageways, corridors, or access routes to other resident rooms.
- (4) Resident room accommodations
 - (a) Each resident shall be provided with an individual wardrobe or closet.
 - (b) Separate, enclosed storage in the resident room shall be provided for each resident.
 - (c) Each resident unit or room shall be equipped to accommodate a television.

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

4.4-2.2.2.4 Resident privacy

- (1) Visual privacy shall be provided for each resident in double-resident rooms.
- (2) Design for privacy shall not restrict resident access to the toilet, room entrance, window, or other shared common areas in the resident room.

4.4-2.2.2.5 ~~4.4-2.2.2.6~~ Reserved

4.4-2.2.2.6 Resident toilet room

- (1) A minimum of one readily accessible toilet room meeting the requirements of 2.1-2.8.6 (Shared Toilet Room) shall be provided for every four residents or major fraction thereof not otherwise served by a toilet room with direct access to a resident room.
- (2) Where toilet rooms are provided with direct access only to a resident room, the following requirements shall apply:
 - (a) The toilet room shall serve no more than two residents.
 - (b) Private individual storage for the personal effects of each resident shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins).
 - (c) Where provided, a bathtub or shower shall comply with Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers).

4.4-2.2.2.7 Resident bathroom. ~~Installation of a tub shall be permitted.~~

- (1) A minimum of one readily accessible bathroom shall be provided for every six residents or major fraction thereof not otherwise served by a bathroom with direct access to a resident room.
- (2) The bathroom shall contain the following:
 - (a) Toilet
 - (b) Handwashing station meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).
 - (c) Private individual storage for the personal effects of each resident. The requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Casework, millwork, and built-ins) shall apply.
 - (d) Bathtub or shower. The requirements of Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers) shall apply.
- (3) Where the bathroom is shared, privacy locks shall be permitted with provisions for emergency access.
- (4) Each toilet in a bathroom without direct access to a resident room shall be permitted to be used to satisfy the requirements of Section 4.4-2.2.2.6 (Resident toilet room).

4.4-2.2.3 ~~4.4-2.2.6~~ Reserved

4.4-2.2.4 4.4-1.1.2.2 Accommodations for care of individuals of size

If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply.

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

4.4-2.2.5 – 4.4-2.2.6 Reserved

4.4-2.2.7 Peritoneal Dialysis

Where residents self-perform or receive peritoneal dialysis, the requirements of Section 2.1-2.2.7 (Peritoneal Dialysis) shall apply, except for Section 2.1-2.2.7.2 (1) (Capacity) when the room is shared by a companion or care partner.

4.4-2.2.8 **Support Areas for the Resident Unit**

4.4-2.2.8.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.8.1 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

4.4-2.2.8.2 Staff work area. See Section 4.1-2.2.8.2 (Assisted Living Settings—Staff work area) for requirements.

4.4-2.2.8.3 – 4.4-2.2.8.7 Reserved

4.4-2.2.8.8 Medication distribution and storage locations. See Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations) for requirements as applicable to the care model (small, medium, or large).

4.4-2.2.8.9 Central bathing or spa room. See Section 4.1-2.2.8.9 (Assisted Living Settings—Central bathing or spa room or area) for requirements.

4.4-2.2.8.10 Reserved

4.4-2.2.8.11 Clean supply room. Where a clean supply room is provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-~~4.5 3.8.11~~ (Clean Workroom ~~and~~ ~~or~~ Clean Supply Room) shall apply.

4.4-2.2.8.12 Soiled holding room. Where a soiled holding room is provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom ~~and~~ ~~or~~ Soiled Holding Room) shall apply.

4.4-2.2.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage for Medium and Large Settings. Equipment and supply storage for medium and large settings shall meet the requirements in Section 4.3-2.2.8.13 (Long-Term Substance-Abuse Treatment Facilities—Equipment and supply storage).

4.4-2.2.8.14 Reserved

4.4-2.2.8.15 **Personal laundry facilities**

- (1) Provision of decentralized facilities for washing and drying personal laundry shall be permitted when the care model supports this approach for small groups of residents.
- (2) Where personal laundry facilities are provided, see Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) for requirements.

4.4-2.2.9 **Support Areas for Staff**

4.4-2.2.9.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

4.4-2.2.9.2 Toilet rooms for staff in medium and large settings. Toilet rooms shall be permitted to be shared by the public, staff, and residents.

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

4.4-2.2.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors

4.4-2.2.10.1 Community areas. Community areas for family and visitors shall be provided based on the care model.

4.4-2.2.10.2 Overnight guest accommodations. Space for sleeping accommodations for overnight guests shall be provided based on the care model.

4.4-2.2.10.3 Pet accommodations. If pets will be permitted in the setting, see Section 2.1-2.10.3 (Pet Accommodations) for requirements.

4.4-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

4.4-2.3.1 General

4.4-2.3.1.1 See Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) for requirements.

4.4-2.3.1.2 Space for circulation of resident-operated mobility devices shall be provided in activity areas.

4.4-2.3.2 Dining ~~Areas~~ **Facilities**

4.4-2.3.2.1 Location. The requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2.1 (Dining, Recreating, and Activity Areas—General) shall be provided. ~~Space for dining shall be provided.~~

4.4-2.3.2.2 Dining area size. ~~Space requirements.~~ Provision of a dining area with a minimum floor area of 25 square feet per resident ~~shall~~ should be ~~provided~~ considered for new construction.

~~(1) Space provided for resident dining shall allow residents, including those using wheelchairs and resident-operated mobility devices, to access and leave their tables without disturbing other residents.~~

~~(2) Where servers and food carts are utilized, clear and unobstructed circulation paths shall be provided.~~

~~(3) Space shall be provided for staff to help residents who require assistance with eating based on the care population.~~

4.4-2.3.3 Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas for Medium and Large Setting Models

See Section 4.1-2.3.3 (Assisted Living Settings—Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas) for requirements.

4.4-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

Outdoor activity areas shall be provided meeting the requirements in See Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas).

4.4-2.3.5 – 4.4-2.3.7 Reserved

4.4-2.3.8 Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

Toilet facilities that accommodate resident-operated mobility devices shall be readily accessible to all dining, recreation, activity, and lounge locations for medium and large setting models.

4.4-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

Where diagnostic and treatment areas are provided, see Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas) for requirements.

4.4-4 Resident Support Facilities

4.4-4.1 Food Service Facilities

4.4-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the setting for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

4.4-4.1.2 Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

4.4-4.1.2.1 Commercial kitchen

4.4-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

4.4-4.1.2.3 Household kitchen

4.4-4.1.2.4 Social activity kitchen

4.4-4.1.2.5 Reserved

4.4-4.1.2.6 Warming/serving kitchen

4.4-4.2 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

Linen and laundry service facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-4.2 (Nursing Homes—Linen and Laundry Service Facilities).

4.4-5 Building Support Facilities

4.4-5.1 Materials Management Facilities

4.4-5.1.1 All settings shall provide for the delivery, breakdown, and storage of materials and supplies in a manner that does not conflict with resident living areas.

4.4-5.1.2 Materials management facilities in large settings shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.1 (Materials Management).

4.4-5.2 Waste Management Facilities

4.4-5.2.1 All settings shall provide for the collection and storage of waste materials in a manner that does not have a negative impact on resident living areas.

4.4-5.2.2 Waste management facilities in large settings shall meet the waste collection, storage, and disposal requirements in Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management).

4.4-5.3 Environmental Services Rooms

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

4.4-5.3.1 All settings shall provide for safe storage of and safe access to cleaning materials and equipment.

4.4-5.3.2 In medium and large settings, see Section 2.1-5.3 (Environmental Services) for requirements.

4.4-5.4 Facilities for Engineering and Maintenance Services in Medium and Large Settings

See Section 2.1-5.4 (Engineering and Maintenance Services) for requirements.

4.4-6 Public and Administrative Areas

4.4-6.1 General

Public and administrative areas shall meet the requirements in Section 3.1-6 (Nursing Homes—Public and Administrative Areas) as amended in this section.

4.4-6.2 Public Areas

4.4-6.2.1 Reserved

4.4-6.2.2 Lobby-Entrance and Reception

~~Where a lobby is provided, see Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Lobby) for requirements.~~ An entrance and reception area shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Entrance and Reception).

4.4-7 Design and Construction Requirements

4.4-7.1 Building Codes and Standards

~~4.4-7.1.1 A code compliant, safe, and accessible environment shall be provided.~~

4.4-7.1.1² The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

4.4-7.1.2³ A facility that seeks accreditation, certification, licensure, or other credentials shall comply with applicable design and construction standards.

4.4-7.1.3⁴ Where institutional codes are required, the facility shall maintain the residential environment desired by residents.

4.4-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) shall apply.

4.4-8 Building Systems

4.4-8.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) shall apply.

4.4-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

4.4-8.2.1 General

4.4-8.2.1.1 Application. HVAC systems that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided.

~~(1) For small and medium-sized settings for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements.~~

~~(2) For large settings for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality* for basic HVAC system requirements.~~

4.4-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

4.4-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

4.4-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3 (HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations) shall apply.

4.4-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

4.4-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

4.4-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

~~See Section 4.1-8.2.6 (Assisted Living Settings—HVAC Filters) for requirements.~~

(1) For centralized recirculated systems, MERV 8 shall be the minimum filter efficiency for the first filter bank. There is no minimum filter efficiency requirement for the second filter bank.

(2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:

(a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.

(b) Serve only a single space.

(c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

4.4-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

(1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.

(2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

4.4-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

4.4-8.2.7.1 General. The requirements in Section ~~4.1~~ 2.1-8.2.7 (~~Assisted Living Settings~~—Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

4.4-8.2.7.2 Heating systems. Settings for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities shall have a permanently installed heating system capable of maintaining an interior minimum temperature of 72°F (22°C) under heating design temperatures.

4.4-8.2.7.3 Cooling systems. Settings for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities shall be configured and equipped with a cooling system capable of maintaining an interior maximum temperature of 75°F (24°C) under cooling design temperatures.

4.4-8.3 Electrical Systems

4.4-8.3.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.1 (Electrical Systems—General) shall apply.

4.4-8.3.2 Power-Generating and Power-Storing Equipment

4.4-8.3.2.1 Essential electrical service

- (1) Applicable standards for care models shall be applied.
 - (a) Facilities with a large setting care model shall have an essential electrical system as required in NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*.
 - (b) For facilities with small and medium setting care models, local codes shall dictate minimum requirements for the essential electrical service.
 - (c) For all settings for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, local codes and care model needs shall dictate emergency lighting requirements.
- (2) Where residents on life support equipment will be served in a setting for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, essential electrical power shall be provided to the life support equipment.
- (3) Where fuel for electricity generation will be stored on-site, the following requirements shall be met:
 - (a) Storage capacity shall permit continuous operation for at least 24 hours.
 - (b) Fuel storage for electricity generation shall be separate from heating fuel storage.
 - (c) Where heating fuel is used for diesel generators after the required 24-hour supply of diesel fuel has been exhausted, positive valving and filtration shall be provided to avoid entry of water and/or contaminants into the storage tank.

4.4-8.3.2.2 Generators. Where generators will be used for a setting for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, exhaust systems (including mufflers and vibration isolators) for internal combustion engines shall be located, designed, and installed to minimize noise.

4.4-8.3.3 Electrical Receptacles

4.4-8.3.3.1 The requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.4 (Electrical Receptacles) shall apply.

4.4 Specific Requirements for Settings for Individuals with Intellectual and/or Developmental Disabilities

[4.4-8.3.3.2 The requirements in Table 2.1-1 \(Required for Electrical Receptacles, Oxygen Outlets, Vacuum Inlets, and Nurse Call Devices in Resident Spaces\) shall apply.](#)

4.4-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) shall be provided.

4.4-8.5 Communications Systems

~~See Section 4.2-8.5 (Independent Living Settings—Communications Systems) for requirements.~~

4.4-8.5.1 General

[Communications systems shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.1 \(Communications Systems\) as amended in this section.](#)

4.4-8.5.2 Call System

[Where call systems are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.2 \(Call System\).](#)

4.4-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

4.4-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

The requirements in Section 4.1-8.7 (Assisted Living Settings—Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems) shall apply.

4.4-8.8 Elevator Systems

4.4-8.8.1 General

[4.4-8.8.1.1 All buildings with 17 or more residents having resident-use areas on more than one floor shall have electric or hydraulic elevators.](#)

[4.4-8.8.1.2 Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 \(Elevator Systems\).](#)

~~Where elevators are provided in large settings for residents with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, they shall meet the requirements in Section 4.3-8.8 (Substance Abuse Facilities—Elevator Systems).~~

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-1 General

4.5-1.1 Application

4.5-1.1.1 General

This chapter shall apply to residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities intended for the care and treatment of residents who do not require acute behavioral and mental health services.

4.5-1.1.1.1 Residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

4.5-1.1.1.2 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities when cross-referenced in this chapter.

4.5-1.1.1.3 Residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities shall be permitted to be a freestanding facility or a distinct part of another residential care or support facility.

4.5-1.1.2 Design Criteria

4.5-1.1.2.1 Reserved

4.5-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions, including dementia, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

4.5-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.4 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

4.5-1.2 Functional Program

A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

4.5-1.2.1 – 4.5-1.2.2 Reserved

4.5-1.2.3 Shared Services

4.5-1.2.3.1 The requirements in Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared Services) shall apply as amended in this section.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-1.2.3.2 Where the residential behavioral and mental health treatment facility is part of another facility, or where different behavioral and mental health resident populations share the same facility, sharing of ancillary and clinical services shall be permitted when the spaces for these shared services are located and configured to accommodate programmatic requirements for safety, security, and other clinical considerations.

4.5-1.3 Site

The requirements in Section 1.3 (Site) shall apply as amended in this section.

4.5-1.3.1 – 4.5-1.3.3 Reserved

4.5-1.3.4 Parking

4.5-1.3.4.1 Parking for residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities shall comply with the requirements in Section 1.3-3.3 (Parking) as amended in this section.

4.5-1.3.4.2 In the absence of local requirements governing parking, the following shall be provided:

- (1) At least one space for each employee normally present during one weekday shift
- (2) One space for every five resident beds or a total of 1.5 spaces per resident. Reduction of this ratio shall be permitted in compliance with Section 1.3-3.3.3 (Parking—Unless otherwise prohibited...).
- (3) Additional parking to accommodate residents or other services provided on-site as indicated in the functional program.

4.5-1.4 Environmental Safety and Prevention of Harm

4.5-1.4.1 Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment

The behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment, Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment) shall establish requirements to mitigate risk of harm to self and others in the therapeutic residential living environment.

4.5-1.4.2 Risk Mitigation

If the behavioral and mental health risk assessment identifies risks to the safety of residents, staff, or visitors within the environment of care; means for harm prevention shall be considered in the design of architectural details and selection of surface materials and building system equipment.

4.5-1.4.2.1 Hidden alcoves and blind corners or areas shall be avoided.

4.5-1.4.2.2 See Section 4.5-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) and Section 4.5-8 (Building Systems) for additional requirements.

4.5-1.4.2.3 Means for visual observation (e.g., electronic surveillance) of resident care corridors, dining areas, and social areas such as dayrooms and activity areas shall be provided.

4.5-1.5 Environment of Care

4.5-1.5.1 Reserved

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-1.5.2 Security

4.5-1.5.2.1 General. The facility design shall provide the level of security needed to address the findings of the safety risk assessment for the following:

- (1) The specific type of treatment service or program offered in the facility
- (2) The age level and acuity of the residents served
- (3) The safety risks anticipated from the residents served

4.5-1.5.2.2 Perimeter security. A perimeter security system shall be permitted where perimeter security is consistent with the organization's behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment and treatment model. Perimeter security shall meet the following requirements:

- (1) Where provided, a perimeter security system shall be designed to:
 - (a) Contain residents within the resident care unit or treatment areas outside the unit until clinical staff and/or security personnel can escort them to an adjacent compartment or an exit stair.
 - (b) Prevent elopement and contraband smuggling
 - (c) Include provisions for monitoring and controlling visitor access and egress.
- (2) Openings in the perimeter security system (e.g., windows, doors, gates) shall be controlled by locks (manual, electric, or magnetic) when required by the safety risk assessment.

4.5-1.5.2.3 Use of security cameras and other security measures consistent with the safety risk assessment shall be permitted in addition to the perimeter security requirements in Section 4.5-1.5.2.2 (Perimeter security).

4.5-1.5.3 Supportive Environment

4.5-1.5.3.1 The facility design shall produce a supportive environment to:

- (1) Enhance and extend quality of life for residents.
- (2) Facilitate wayfinding.
- (3) Promote resident privacy and dignity.

4.5-1.5.3.2 The physical environment of the residential treatment facility shall support the services and levels of care provided in the facility.

4.5-1.5.3.3 Residential treatment facilities shall be designed and constructed to provide a residential environment that accommodates residents' day-to-day community activities and responsibilities.

4.5-2 Resident Care Areas

4.5-2.1 General

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-2.1.1 Application

Resident areas in residential treatment facilities shall meet the minimum design requirements described in this section.

4.5-2.1.2 New Construction

Resident care units in behavioral and mental health residential treatment facilities shall meet the minimum design requirements described herein.

4.5-2.1.3 Renovation

See Section 1.1-3 (Renovation) for renovation of resident care unit in existing facilities for further guidance when compliance with this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings* is impractical.

4.5-2.1.4 Facility Layout

Areas for the care and treatment of outpatients shall not interfere with or infringe on the private living area of residents.

4.5-2.2 Resident Unit or Private Living Area

4.5-2.2.1 General

4.5-2.2.1.1 Access control

- (1) Consistent with the organization's safety risk assessment, access control shall be provided for all entrances to a general behavioral and mental health residential living unit.
- (2) The primary access point to a locked unit shall be through a sally port when the need for elopement prevention is indicated by the behavioral and mental health section of the safety risk assessment, See Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment).

4.5-2.2.1.2 Resident telephone access. See Section 2.1-2.2.1.4 (Resident telephone access) for requirements.

4.5-2.2.2 Resident Room Requirements New Construction

For new construction, each resident room shall meet the requirements in this section.

4.5-2.2.2.1 Capacity. Maximum room capacity shall be one resident unless the facility's care model demonstrates a therapeutic benefit derived from room sharing in which case a maximum room capacity of two residents shall be permitted.

4.5-2.2.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Area

- (a) Single-resident room. Where a single-resident room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 130 square feet (12.07 square meters).

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(b) Multiple-resident room. Where a multiple-resident room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) per bed.

(3) Layout. Resident rooms shall not be permitted to serve as passageways, corridors, or access routes to other resident rooms.

(4) Storage for residents

(a) Each resident shall be provided with an individual storage unit that can accommodate a daily change of clothes for seven days.

(b) Storage for resident mobility devices shall be determined by the safety risk assessment.

4.5-2.2.2.3 Windows. Each resident room shall have a window meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.5 (Windows) and Section 4.5-7.2.2.5 (Windows).

4.5-2.2.2.4 Resident privacy. Where the residential treatment care model or clinical operational model determines the need for visual and/or acoustic privacy for residents, provisions for such privacy shall be made in accordance with the safety risk assessment.

4.5-2.2.2.5 Handwashing station

(1) Where a handwashing station is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing Stations).

(2) Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, handwashing stations shall be ligature-resistant.

4.5-2.2.2.6 Resident toilet room. Each resident shall have access to a toilet room.

(1) Location

(a) Where permitted by the organization's clinical operational assessment, functional program, and/or safety risk assessment, the toilet room shall be directly accessible to the resident room.

(b) Where the toilet room is provided in a centralized location, one toilet room shall be provided for each four beds and for each major fraction thereof.

(2) The toilet room shall contain the following:

(a) Toilet

(b) Handwashing station meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations). Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, the handwashing station shall be ligature-resistant.

(c) Toilet room doors

(i) Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, toilet room doors shall be equipped with keyed privacy locks that allow staff to control access to the toilet room.

(ii) Where a swinging door is used, it shall meet the following requirements:

- The door to the toilet room shall swing outward or be double-acting.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

- The door to the toilet room shall not create a positive latching condition that may create a ligature point.

(iii) Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, replacement of the toilet room door with other means of providing visual privacy shall be permitted.

(3) See Section 4.5-7.2.2.6 (Resident toilet room/bathing facility hardware and accessories) for further design requirements.

4.5-2.2.2.7 Resident bathing facilities

(1) Location. A shower shall be provided in the resident toilet room or in a separate shower room in the resident care unit.

(2) Where a separate shower room is provided, one shower shall be provided for each six beds and for each major fraction thereof.

(3) Shower design

(a) See Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers) for requirements.

(b) Showers shall be designed to be free of shower curtains.

(4) Where the shower room is shared, privacy locks shall be permitted with provisions for emergency access.

(5) See Section 4.5-7.2.2.6 (Resident toilet room/bathing facility hardware and accessories) for further design requirements.

4.5-2.2.3 Resident Room Requirements for Renovation

4.5-2.2.3.1 General. Resident rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 4.5-2.2.2 (Resident Room Requirements for New Construction) as amended in this section.

4.5-2.2.3.2 Capacity. Multiple-resident rooms shall have a maximum capacity of four residents.

4.5-2.2.4 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply.

4.5-2.2.5 Special Resident Care Areas

4.5-2.2.5.1 – 4.5-2.2.5.3 Reserved

4.5-2.2.5.4 Quiet room. Where a quiet room is provided, the requirements Section 2.1-2.2.5.4 (Quiet room) shall apply as amended in this section.

(1) The quiet room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

(2) Use of the visitor room in Section 4.5-2.2.10.3 (Visitor Room) for this purpose shall be permitted unless it is already being used as a consultation room under the exception in Section 4.5-2.2.8.16 (Consultation Room).

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-2.2.5.5 Seclusion room. Where the organization's treatment mode, clinical operational model, and behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment indicate the need for a seclusion room in the resident unit, a room that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided.

(1) General

(a) Anteroom or vestibule

- (i) Seclusion rooms shall be accessed by an anteroom or vestibule.
- (ii) The anteroom or vestibule shall be located to permit direct observation from outside the room.
- (iii) The anteroom or vestibule shall provide access to a toilet room.

(b) Capacity. Maximum room capacity shall be one resident.

(c) Location

- (i) The seclusion room shall be located to permit direct observation from outside the room.
- (ii) Where more than one seclusion room is provided, the rooms shall be permitted to be grouped together.

(2) Space requirements

- (a) Seclusion rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2.13 meters) and a maximum wall length of 12 feet (3.66 meters).
- (b) Where a seclusion room that will be used for restraining patients is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

(3) – (4) Reserved

(5) Special design elements. Seclusion rooms shall be designed and constructed to avoid features that enable patient hiding, escape, injury, or self-harm.

(a) Architectural details

- (i) The walls, ceiling, and floor of the seclusion room shall be designed to withstand direct and forceful impact.
- (ii) Seclusion rooms shall not contain sharp corners or edges.
- (ii) Minimum ceiling height shall be 9 feet (2.74 meters).

(iv) Doors

- Door openings shall have a minimum clear width of 44 inches (1.12 meters).
- The entrance door to the seclusion room shall swing out.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

- Doors shall permit staff observation of the patient through a view panel, while also maintaining provisions for patient privacy. The view panel shall be fixed glazing with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing.

(b) Building systems

(i) All building system components in the seclusion room, including but not limited to lighting fixtures, sprinkler heads, HVAC grilles, and surveillance cameras, shall be tamper-resistant and designed to prevent injury to the resident.

(ii) Electrical switches and receptacles are prohibited in the seclusion room.

4.5-2.2.6 – 4.5-2.2.7 Reserved

4.5-2.2.8 Support Areas for the Resident Unit

4.5-2.2.8.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.8 (Support Areas for Resident and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

(1) Application. All support areas for the resident unit shall meet the requirements in this section.

(2) Location

(a) Support areas listed in this section shall be in or readily accessible to each resident unit, unless otherwise noted.

(b) Arrangement and location of these support areas to serve more than one resident living unit shall be permitted. However, unless otherwise noted, at least one such support area shall be provided on each resident care floor.

4.5-2.2.8.2 Staff station and work areas. Where a staff station is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.2 (Staff Work Area).

4.5-2.2.8.3 Documentation area. Where a separate charting area is provided, it shall be designed for acoustic and resident file privacy.

4.5-2.2.8.4 Offices. Where provided, staff offices shall be in an administrative office location and not directly inside the resident living unit.

4.5-2.2.8.5 Multipurpose room. Location of these space(s) shall be permitted either in the behavioral and mental health resident living unit or immediately accessible to it.

4.5-2.2.8.6 Reserved

4.5-2.2.8.7 Handwashing station. The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall apply.

4.5-2.2.8.8 Medication distribution and storage locations

(1) Where a medication distribution and storage location is provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Location) shall apply as amended in this section.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(2) Security shall be provided for all medications.

4.5-2.2.8.9 Nourishment area

(1) Use of one or a combination of the following shall be permitted to support food service in the resident living unit:

(a) A nourishment station

(b) A kitchenette designed for resident use with staff control of heating and cooking devices

(2) Where a nourishment area is provided within the resident living unit, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities) and the following shall be provided:

(a) Handwashing station

(b) Secured storage

(c) Refrigerator

(d) Facilities for meal preparation and/or service

4.5-2.2.8.10 Ice-making equipment. Where provided, ice-making equipment shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.2.2 (4) (Food preparation areas—Ice-making equipment).

4.5-2.2.8.11 Clean workroom. Where the residential setting includes delivery of medical care and/or where required by the care model, a clean workroom shall be provided for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean materials. It shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room).

4.5-2.2.8.12 Soiled workroom. Where the residential setting includes delivery of medical care and/or where required by the care model, a soiled workroom shall be provided for storage and holding as part of a system for collection of soiled materials. It shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom and Soiled Holding Room).

4.5-2.2.8.13 Equipment and supply storage. Location of the storage areas listed below in resident living units shall be permitted where they will not present a risk to the resident population as indicated in the safety risk assessment. See Section 2.1-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

(1) Storage for residents' needs

(a) Storage space provided for resident equipment and supplies shall be immediately accessible to support services offered.

(b) This storage shall be secured based on the care population.

(2) Secured storage for residents' potentially harmful belongings

(a) A staff-controlled secured storage area shall be provided for residents' effects that are determined to be potentially harmful (e.g., razors, nail files, cigarette lighters).

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(b) Combination of this storage area with the clean workroom or clean supply room in Section 4.5-2.2.8.11 (Clean workroom) shall be permitted

(3) Secured supply storage for recreation and other resident activities. Storage space for program supplies and therapy and recreation items shall be immediately accessible to the areas where these supplies and items are used.

(4) Clean linen storage. See Section 2.1-2.8.13.1 (Clean linen storage) for requirements.

(5) Wheelchair and resident mobility device storage space. Where provided, this space shall be secured.

(6) Emergency equipment storage. Where provided, this storage shall be under visual observation of the staff.

(7) Administrative supplies storage. Where this storage is provided in the resident living areas, it shall be secured.

4.5-2.2.8.14 Environmental services room

(1) A minimum of one environmental services room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.14 (Environmental Services Room) shall be provided.

(2) Location of this room in the resident living unit shall be permitted when it is secured and will not present a risk to the resident population.

4.5-2.2.8.15 Personal laundry facilities

(1) Personal laundry facilities for residents to complete their own laundry shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) as amended in this section.

(2) Equipment shall include washers and dryers based on the number of residents being served.

4.5-2.2.8.16 Consultation room

(1) General

(a) A minimum of one consultation room shall be provided for every 12 resident beds or fewer.

(b) Use of the visitor room in Section 4.5-2.2.10.3 (Visitor room) for this purpose shall be permitted.

(2) Location. Consultation rooms shall be located in a common residential living area if the organization's care model supports that location.

(3) Space requirements. Consultation rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

(4) Privacy. The room(s) shall be designed for acoustic and visual privacy. See Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms) for acoustic requirements.

4.5-2.2.8.17 Conference room

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(1) A conference and treatment planning room shall be provided in the behavioral and mental health resident living unit.

(2) This room shall be located in a common resident activity area if supported by the organization's care model.

4.5-2.2.8.18 Group therapy room. Where provided, a group room shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) Space requirements

(a) Size and dimensions of group rooms shall accommodate the number of seats expected in the most likely configuration for the most frequent number of occupants.

(b) Rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 105 square feet (9.75 square meters) plus additional increments of 15 square feet (1.39 square meters) per person beyond five people.

(2) Combination of the group therapy room with the quiet activity space in Section 4.5-2.2.10.4 (Dining and Social Spaces) shall be permitted where the unit accommodates no more than 12 residents and at least 225 square feet (20.90 square meters) of enclosed private space is available for group therapy activities.

(3) Staff assist device. Each group room shall include a staff-assist or duress device as indicated in Section 4.5-8.5.1.3 (Emergency Call System).

(4) Door. At least one door into a group room shall swing out or be double-acting.

4.5-2.2.8.19 Central bathing or therapy tub room. Where a tub room is provided, the requirements in sections 2.1-2.8.9 (Central Bathing Room) and 4.5-2.2.2.7 (Resident bathing facilities) shall apply in addition to the requirements in this section.

(1) The central bathing or therapy tub room shall be designed as established in the behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment.

(2) Location. The location of the central bathing or therapy tub room shall be determined by the organization's clinical operational assessment, management program, functional program, and/or safety risk assessment.

4.5-2.2.9 Support Areas for Staff

4.5-2.2.9.1 General. Support areas for that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff) shall be provided in addition to those in this section.

4.5-2.2.9.2 Toilet rooms. Toilet rooms shall be designated for visitors, staff, and residents based on the size of the facility and the total number of users.

4.5-2.2.10 Support Areas for Residents and Visitors

4.5-2.2.10.1 Where support areas in Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) are provided, they shall meet the requirements in that section in addition to those in this section.

4.5-2.2.10.2 Community areas or private visitor rooms. Community areas or private visitor rooms shall be provided based on the care model.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

- (1) Where provided, community or social areas shall be designed to be supervised as required by the care model and safety risk assessment.
- (2) Space requirements. Visitor rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) to allow residents to meet with friends and family.

4.5-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

4.5-2.3.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) shall apply as amended in this section.

4.5-2.3.2 Dining Areas

Where dining areas are shared with social activity spaces with provisions for communal dining, the dining areas shall meet the following requirements:

4.5-2.3.2.1 Location. Location of dining areas in a central location outside of the resident living unit shall be permitted.

4.5-2.3.2.2 Space requirements for dining areas

- (1) 20 square feet (1.86 square meters) per resident shall be provided for dining.
- (2) Use of a social space as described in Section 4.5-2.3.3.3 (Social spaces) for dining activities shall be permitted where an additional 15 square feet (1.39 square meters) per resident is added.
- (3) Clear and unobstructed circulation paths shall be provided for residents and food service staff based on the food delivery process used in the residential behavioral and mental health treatment facility.

4.5-2.3.2.3 Natural light shall be provided in resident dining areas.

4.5-2.3.3 Recreation and Activity Areas

4.5-2.3.3.1 Where provided, recreation and activity areas shall accommodate both group and individual activities and recreational opportunities.

4.5-2.3.3.2 Space requirements. Recreation and activity areas shall provide the following:

- (1) Space for planned resident activities
- (2) Areas sufficient in number and configuration to accommodate the following:
 - (a) Gatherings of resident groups of various sizes
 - (b) Simultaneous occurrence of separate and distinct activities

4.5-2.3.3.3 Social spaces

- (1) At least two separate social spaces, one appropriate for noisy activities and one for quiet activities, shall be provided.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(2) Space requirements. The combined area of these social spaces shall have a minimum of 25 square feet (2.32 square meters) per resident with at least 120 square feet (11.15 square meters) for each of the two spaces.

4.5-2.3.4 Outdoor activity areas

Where outdoor areas are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas) and the following additional requirements if determined appropriate for the organization's care model and addressed by the safety risk assessment.

(1) Fences and walls. Fences and walls that form a secure outdoor space and serve a locked resident care unit, they shall:

(a) Be designed to hinder climbing.

(b) Be installed with tamper-resistant hardware.

(c) Meet one of the following conditions:

(i) Have a minimum height of 14 feet (4.27 meters) above the outdoor area elevation

(ii) Be angled inward where the height exceeds 10 feet (3.05 meters) and is less than 14 feet (4.27 meters)

(d) Be anchored to withstand the body force of a 350-pound (158.76-kilogram) person.

(2) Gates or doors. Where provided, gates or doors in the fence or wall shall:

(a) Swing out of the outdoor area.

(b) Have the hinge installed on the outside of the outdoor area.

(c) Be provided with a locking mechanism that has been coordinated with life safety exiting requirements.

(3) Trees and bushes shall not be placed adjacent to the fence or wall.

(4) Plants selected for use shall be nontoxic and not poisonous to humans.

(5) Lighting

(a) Luminaires accessible to residents shall have tamper-resistant lenses.

(b) Poles supporting luminaires shall not be capable of being climbed.

(6) Security cameras. Where provided, security cameras shall:

(a) Allow views of the entire outdoor area.

(b) Be inaccessible to residents.

(c) Preclude views in indoor privacy-sensitive areas.

(7) Furniture

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(a) Where provided, furniture shall be secured to the ground or weighted to restrict movement by the residents.

(b) Furniture shall not be placed in locations where it can be used to climb a fence or wall.

(8) Elevated courtyards or outdoor areas located above the ground floor level shall not contain skylights or unprotected walkways or ledges.

(9) A duress alarm system shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 4.5-8.5.1.3 (Emergency call system).

4.5-2.3.5 Reserved

4.5-2.3.6 Toilet Room

Toilet rooms shall be readily accessible to dining, recreation, and activity areas.

4.5-2.3.7 Reserved

4.5-2.3.8 Visitor Storage Facilities

Space for locked storage of visitor belongings shall be provided.

4.5-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

4.5-3.1 General

Where diagnostic and treatment areas are required for the resident care population or as part of community-based services, see Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas).

4.5-3.1 Exam Room

4.5-3.1.1 Where exam rooms are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Space Requirements) as amended in this section.

4.5-3.1.2 Location

4.5-3.1.2.1 Exam rooms shall be permitted to serve multiple resident care units.

4.5-3.1.2.2 Exam rooms shall be permitted to be located on a different floor than the care unit.

4.5-4 Resident Support Facilities

4.5-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the residential treatment facility shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

4.5-4.1.2 Food Service Facilities

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities).

4.5-4.1.2.1 Commercial kitchen

4.5-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

4.5-4.1.2.3 Household kitchen

4.5-4.1.2.4 Social activity kitchen

4.5-4.1.2.5 Reserve

4.5-4.1.2.6 Warming/serving kitchen

4.5-5 Building Support Facilities

Where building support facilities are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) and the requirements in this section.

4.5-5.1 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

Linen and laundry service facilities, for use other than resident personal clothing, shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Linen and Laundry Service Facilities) and Section 3.1-4.2 (Nursing Homes—Linen and Laundry Service Facilities).

4.5-5.1.1 Materials Management

4.5-5.2 Reserved

4.5-5.3.1 General

Residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities shall meet the requirements of Section 2.1-5.1 (Materials Management) as amended in this section

4.5-5.3.2 Space Requirements for General Storage

General storage room(s) with a minimum total area of 4 square feet (0.37 square meters) per resident bed shall be provided.

4.5-5.4 Waste Management Facilities

Waste management requirements shall be scaled to the size and operational need of the residential facility. The requirements in Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) shall apply.

4.5-5.5 Environmental Services

Environmental services shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-5.3 (Environmental Services).

4.5-5.6 Engineering and Maintenance Services

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

Engineering and maintenance services shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-5.4 (Engineering and Maintenance Services).

4.5-6 Public and Administrative Areas

4.5-6.1 General

Public and administrative areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6 (Public and Administrative Areas) as amended in this section.

4.5-6.2 Public Areas

4.5-6.2.1 Reserved

4.5-6.2.2 Entrance

4.5-6.2.2.1 Entrances shall be secure where this is a standalone residential behavioral and mental health treatment facility.

4.5-6.2.2.2 Where entrance lobby and/or elevators are shared with other tenants, travel to the behavioral and mental health services shall be direct and accessible. Except for passage through common doors, lobbies, or elevator stations, residents shall not be required to go through other occupied areas or facility service areas.

4.5-6.2.2.3 Reception

(1) A reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk shall be provided.

(2) The reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk shall be immediately visible from the entrance.

4.5-6.2.2.4 Waiting area

(1) The waiting area for residents and escorts shall be under direct visual control of the reception desk or security staff or via electronic surveillance.

(2) Where the behavioral and mental health resident treatment facility has a dedicated pediatrics service, a separate, access-controlled waiting area for pediatric (child or adolescent) residents and visitors shall be provided.

4.5-6.3 Administrative Areas

Identification of required workspaces for in-house staff and contracted visiting staff, based on professional discipline, shall be taken into consideration when planning office space and work areas.

4.5-7 Design and Construction Requirements

4.5-7.1 Building Codes and Standards

4.5-7.1.1 The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-7.1.2 A residential behavioral and mental health treatment facility that seeks accreditation, certification, licensure, or other credentials shall comply with applicable design and construction standards.

4.5-7.1.3 Where institutional codes are required, the residential behavioral and mental health treatment facility shall maintain the residential environment desired by residents.

4.5-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

4.5-7.2.1 General

4.5-7.2.1.1 Architectural details, surfaces, and furnishings shall comply with Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) as amended in this section.

4.5-7.2.1.2 Design consideration shall be given to injury and suicide prevention as indicated in the behavioral and mental health portion of the safety risk assessment Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment).

4.5-7.2.2 Reserved

4.5-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware

(1) Reserved

(2) Door openings. Door openings for resident use in new construction shall have a minimum clear width of 32 inches (81.28 centimeters).

(3) Door swings. Doors to private resident toilet rooms or bathing facilities shall swing out, be double-acting with an emergency strike, or have other barricade-resistant provisions to allow for staff emergency access.

(4) Door closers

(a) Use of door closers is to be avoided unless required for the care being provided.

(b) Door closer devices, if required on the resident bedroom door, shall be a mortised type or surface-mounted on the public side of the door rather than the private resident side of the door.

(5) Door hinges

(a) Door hinges shall be designed to minimize points for ligature risks (e.g., cut hinge type).

(b) Door hinges used shall be consistent with the level of care for the resident and as established in the behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment.

(6) Door handles. Door handles shall be designed to be ligature-resistant, as established in the behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment.

(7) Fasteners. All hardware shall have tamper-resistant fasteners, as established in the behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment.

4.5-7.2.2.4 Reserved

4.5-7.2.2.5 Windows

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

- (1) Windows located in resident care areas or areas used by residents. All windows, including the exterior pane of windows accessible by residents from outdoor courtyards, shall be designed to limit the opportunities for residents to seriously harm themselves by breaking the windows and using pieces of the broken glazing material to inflict harm to themselves or others.
 - (a) All glazing (both interior and exterior), borrowed lights, and glass mirrors shall be fabricated with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing or with any glazing that meets or exceeds the requirements for Class 1.4 per ASTM F1233: *Standard Test Method for Security Glazing Material and Systems*.
 - (b) Use of tempered glass for borrowed lights shall be permitted.
- (2) Exterior windows located in resident care areas or areas used by residents. For secure units, to prevent opportunities for suicide, self-harm, and escape, the entire window system and the anchorage for windows and window assemblies, including frames, glazing, and hinges and locking devices for operable windows, shall meet the following requirements:
 - (a) Designed to resist impact loads of 2,000 foot-pounds applied from the inside
 - (b) Tested in accordance with AAMA 501.8: *Standard Test Method for Determination of Resistance to Human Impact of Window Systems Intended for Use in Psychiatric Applications*
- (3) A minimum net glazed area of no less than 8 percent of the minimum required floor area of the aggregate social and dining spaces shall be provided.

4.5-7.2.2.6 Resident toilet room/bathing facility hardware and accessories. Design considerations for injury and suicide prevention shall be given to shower, bath, toilet, and sink hardware and accessories, including grab bars and toilet paper holders, as established in the behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment.

- (1) Grab bars. Grab bars shall be anchored to sustain a concentrated load of 250 pounds (113.4 kilograms).
- (2) The following are not permitted:
 - (a) Towel bars
 - (b) Shower curtain rods
 - (c) Lever handles, except for a specifically designed ligature-resistant lever handle is used

4.5-7.2.3 Surfaces

4.5-7.2.3.1 - 4.5-7.2.3.2 Reserved

4.5-7.2.3.3 Ceilings

- (1) Monolithic ceilings shall be provided in seclusion rooms, resident rooms, resident toilet rooms, and resident bathing facilities.
 - (a) In these rooms, the ceiling shall be secured from resident access.
 - (b) Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems, other than terminal elements serving the room, shall be concealed above the ceiling.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(2) In seclusion rooms (where provided), resident rooms, resident toilet rooms, and resident bathing facilities, ventilation grille shall be of a tamper- and ligature-resistant type.

(3) Ceiling access doors shall be without gaps and secured with a keyed lock and/or tamper-resistant fasteners.

4.5-7.2.4 Furnishings

4.5-7.2.4.1 Built-in furnishings

(1) Built-in furnishings shall be constructed to minimize potential for injury, suicide, or elopement.

(2) Built-in furnishings with doors or drawers shall not be provided.

(3) Open shelves shall be fixed with tamper-resistant hardware.

4.5-7.2.4.2 Where provided, robe or towel hooks shall be designed for ligature resistance. Clothing rods shall not be permitted.

4.5-7.2.4.3 Window treatments in resident rooms and other resident care areas

(1) Exposed window treatments in resident rooms shall be ligature resistant.

(2) Where window treatments are provided in lower-risk areas under staff supervision, they shall be designed without accessible anchor points or cords.

4.5-8 Building Systems

4.5-8.1 General

4.5-8.1.1 The requirements in Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) shall apply as amended in this section.

4.5-8.1.2 Tamper and Ligature Resistance

Electrical receptacles and other appurtenances shall be of a tamper- and ligature-resistant type in resident toilet rooms and bathing facilities, resident rooms, and other high-risk residential areas as established in the behavioral and mental health safety risk assessment Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment).

4.5-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

4.5-8.2.1 General

4.5-8.2.1.1 Application

(1) For residential treatment facilities with 16 or fewer residents, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings* for basic HVAC system requirements.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

(2) For residential treatment facilities with more than 16 residents, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality for basic HVAC system requirements.

4.5-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning

(1) The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

(2) Ventilation and space conditioning systems shall meet the requirements of a Level 2 Ventilation and space conditioning system as defined in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2. (3) (Ventilation and space conditioning).

4.5-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

See Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) for requirements.

4.5-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

See Section 2.1-8.2.3 (HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations) for requirements.

4.5-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

See Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) for requirements.

4.5-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

See Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) for requirements.

4.5-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

See Section 2.1-8.2.6 (HVAC Filters) for requirements.

4.5-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

See Section 2.1-8.2.7 (Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) for requirements.

4.5-8.3 Electrical Systems

4.5-8.3.1 General Where generators are used, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.3.2 (Generators) shall apply.

4.5-8.3.3 Electrical Receptacles

4.5-8.3.3.1 General. Electrical receptacles shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.4 (Electrical Receptacles) as amended in this section.

(1) At minimum, residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities, or sections thereof, shall have essential electrical systems as required in the following standards:

- (a) NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*, where applicable
- (b) NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*
- (c) NFPS 110: *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

- (2) An emergency electrical source shall provide lighting and/or power during an interruption of normal electrical supply.
- (3) Electrical equipment. Special design considerations for injury and suicide prevention shall be given to the electrical equipment in the residential behavioral and mental health treatment facility as determined by the safety risk assessment, including light fixtures, electrical receptacles, and electrical appliances.

4.5-8.3.3.2 Receptacles in resident rooms. Where electrical receptacles are provided in a resident room, the receptacles shall be:

- (1) Tamper-resistant
- (2) Either ground-fault circuit interrupter devices or on a circuit protected by a ground-fault circuit breaker.

4.5-8.3.4 Lighting

4.5-8.3.4.1 General. Luminaires shall be tamper- and ligature-resistant and engineered for the specific application, as determined by the behavioral and mental health portion of the safety risk assessment Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment).

4.5-8.3.4.2 Lighting for specific locations in the residential behavioral and mental health treatment facility

- (1) Resident rooms shall have general lighting and night-lighting. At least one night-light fixture in each room shall be controlled at the room entrance.
- (2) Resident room corridors in residential units shall have general illumination with provisions for reducing light levels at night.
- (3) Exterior lighting. Approaches to buildings and parking lots and all occupied spaces shall have luminaires that can be illuminated, as necessary.

4.5-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) shall be provided as amended in this section.

4.5-8.4.1 General

In the absence of local and state plumbing codes, all plumbing systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with the chapters in the *International Plumbing Code* that are applicable for this occupancy.

4.5-8.4.2 Plumbing Fixtures

Special design considerations for injury and suicide prevention shall be given to shower, bath, toilet, and sink plumbing fixtures. Shower heads shall be of flush-mounted design to minimize hanging appendages.

4.5-8.5 Communications Systems

Communications systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications and Technology Systems) as amended in this section.

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-8.5.1 Call Systems

Special design considerations for injury and suicide prevention shall be given to the call systems in the residential behavioral and mental health treatment facilities, including staff-assist call systems and staff emergency assistance systems.

4.5-8.5.1.1 General

(1) Staff response call systems shall be low voltage with limited current.

(2) Controls to limit unauthorized use shall be permitted.

4.5-8.5.1.2 Resident unit call system. Where a call system is installed in areas designated for behavioral and mental health residents, it shall meet the following requirements:

(1) The staff call system and call devices shall be tamper- and ligature resistant.

(2) Cords at call stations in rooms designated for behavioral and mental health resident use shall be detachable and no longer than 6 inches (15.24 centimeters).

(3) Signal location

(a) Calls shall activate a visible signal in the corridor at the resident's door and at an annunciator panel at the staff station or other appropriate location.

(b) In multi-corridor residential units, additional visible signals shall be installed at corridor intersections.

4.5-8.5.1.3 Emergency call system. Where an emergency call or duress call system is provided, it shall be designed to meet the following requirements:

(1) A signal activated by staff will initiate a visible and audible signal distinct from the regular staff assist call system.

(2) The signal shall activate an annunciator panel at the staff station or other appropriate location and a distinct visible signal in the corridor at the door to the room from which the signal was initiated.

4.5-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

4.5-8.6.1 Fire Protection System

Where the following fire protection system components could be accessed residents, they shall be tamper- and impact-resistant and of a design to minimize ligature risks:

4.5-8.6.1.1 Fire extinguishers and cabinets

4.5-8.6.1.2 Fire alarm system devices

4.5-8.6.1.3 Fire sprinkler system components

4.5-8.6.1.4 Egress signage

4.5 Specific Requirements for Residential Behavioral and Mental Health Treatment Facilities

4.5-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.2 (Daylighting Systems in Resident...) shall apply.

4.5-8.8 Elevator Systems

4.5-8.8.1 General

Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems) as amended in this section.

4.5-8.8.2 Elevator controls

Elevator call buttons and car buttons shall be key-controlled where required by the behavioral and mental health section of the safety risk assessment Section 1.2-4.6 (Resident Dementia and Behavioral and Mental Health Safety Risk Assessment).

DRAFT

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities

5.1-1 General

5.1-1.1 Application

5.1-1.1.1 General

5.1-1.1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to facilities where adult day care and adult day health care (ADHC) services are provided.

5.1-1.1.1.2 Adult day care facilities and ADHC facilities shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

5.1-1.1.1.3 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to adult day care facilities and ADHC facilities when cross-referenced in this chapter.

5.1-1.1.2 Design Criteria

5.1-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved Sustainable design. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.~~

5.1-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals of size. If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements of Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply except for the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4.2 (Resident room for individuals of size).

5.1-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral or mental health issues~~, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

5.1-1.1.2.4 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

5.1-1.1.2.5 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care. If the services offered include palliative care, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.4 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals receiving palliative care) shall apply.

5.1-1.2 Functional Program

5.1-1.2.1 A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

5.1-1.2.2 Shared Services

5.1-1.2.2.1 Where an adult day care or ADHC facility is part of (or contractually linked with) another facility, sharing of services and space for home health, dietary, storage, pharmacy, linen, and other services shall be permitted insofar as practical.

5.1-1.2.2.2 Where a project calls for sharing or purchasing services from another entity, appropriate modifications to the requirements for space and parking shall be permitted.

5.1-1.2.2.3 An adult day care or ADHC facility located in a facility that houses other services shall have its own identifiable space.

5.1-1.2.2.4 All support spaces shall be permitted to be shared.

5.1-1.3 Site

See Chapter 1.3 (Site) for requirements.

5.1-1.4 ~~Reserved~~ ~~Safety Risk Assessment~~

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

5.1-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

See sections 1.2-1.3 (Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) for requirements.

5.1-2 Participant Areas

5.1-2.1 General

5.1-2.1.1 The adult day care or ADHC facility shall have sufficient space, furnishings, gardens or other outdoor areas, and equipment to accommodate the range of program activities and services for the number of participants to be served.

5.1-2.1.2 An area where participants can make and receive telephone calls in private shall be provided.

5.1-2.2 Reserved

5.1-2.3 Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

5.1-2.3.1 General

See Section 2.1-2.3.1 (Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—General) for requirements.

5.1-2.3.2 Dining Areas

The requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.2 (Dining Areas) shall apply.

5.1-2.3.3 Recreation, Lounge, and Activity Areas

5.1-2.3.3.1 Spaces for different activities shall be provided based on the care population served.

(1) For facilities that serve participants with dementia, space shall be provided to allow for at least two

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

separate areas for socializing in small groups.

- (2) For facilities that serve participants with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities, space shall be provided for activities that require large equipment (e.g., ping pong) or large muscle movement.

5.1-2.3.3.2 Space requirements

- (1) Net usable space. Only spaces used by participants shall be counted as net usable activity space. Reception areas, storage areas, offices, restrooms, and service areas shall not be included.
 - (a) Where a warming/serving or social activity kitchen is used for activities other than meals, 50 percent of the floor area shall be permitted to count as activity space.
 - (b) A commercial kitchen shall not count as activity space.
 - (c) Where a clearly marked corridor is treated as a wandering pathway with lean rails or handrails, 100 percent of the floor area shall be permitted to be counted as activity space.
- (2) Area. Minimum square footage requirements shall be based on the services offered by the adult day care or ADHC facility.
 - (a) A minimum of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) shall be provided for each of the first five participants and 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) of net usable program activity space for each participant thereafter.
 - (b) Where the facility offers physical rehabilitation therapy, an additional 50 square feet (4.65 square meters) of space per participant using the therapy space at one time shall be provided to accommodate space needed for equipment and treatment.

5.1-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

5.1-2.3.4.1 Outdoor activity areas shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas) in addition to those in this section.

5.1-2.3.4.2 Outdoor recreation and/or relaxation areas for participants shall be visible and accessible from the common dining, recreation, and activity areas.

5.1-2.3.4.3 Outdoor areas shall have a fence or landscaping to create a boundary that prevents participant elopement.

5.1-2.3.5 – 5.1-2.3.7 Reserved

5.1-2.3.8 Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas

5.1-2.3.8.1 Handwashing station. All communal activity areas shall have access to a handwashing station. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.

5.1-2.3.8.2 Toilet rooms. The adult day care facility shall have at least one toilet room for every 10 participants and fraction thereof.

- (1) Location. A participant toilet room shall be located adjacent to dining, recreation, lounge, and activity areas.

- (2) Space requirements

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

(a) Toilet rooms or stalls shall be sized and configured to accommodate staff assistance including use of lifting equipment, where applicable, and accessibility standards that support independent participant use.

(b) At least one toilet room that can accommodate a two-person assisted transfer between a participant-operated mobility device and toilet shall be provided.

(3) The toilet room shall contain the following:

(a) Toilet or stalls with toilets. The toilet room shall be permitted to be an individual toilet room or a toilet room with multiple stalls, as determined by the level of care required for the participant population during the planning phase.

(b) Handwashing station

(c) Mirror. For requirements, see Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (7) (Mirror).

5.1-2.4 Special Care Participant Areas

5.1-2.4.1 – 5.1-2.4.3 Reserved

5.1-2.4.4 Quiet Room or Observation Area

Where a quiet room or observation area to lie down is provided, the following requirements shall be met:

5.1-2.4.4.1 Capacity. Each room or area shall be designed to accommodate a minimum of one resident.

5.1-2.4.4.2 Location

(1) A quiet room or observation area shall be located where it can be clearly monitored.

(2) Exam/treatment rooms provided for ADHC (including PACE) centers shall be permitted to serve as the quiet room or observation area. See Section 5.1-3.2 (Exam/Treatment Rooms) for information on ADHC treatment room requirements for PACE centers.

5.1-2.4.4.3 Space requirements. Circulation space shall be provided to allow transfer from a mobility device to a nursing bed.

5.1-2.4.4.4 Participant toilet room. A toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 5.1-2.3.8.2 (Support areas for dining, recreation, and activity locations—Toilet rooms) shall be located adjacent to the quiet room.

(1) This shall be an individual toilet room or a toilet room with multiple stalls.

(2) This toilet room shall be permitted to be shared by participants using other activity spaces.

5.1-2.4.4.5 The quiet room or observation area shall be permitted to contribute to the net usable space for participants.

5.1-2.5 – 5.1-2.7 Reserved

5.1-2.8 Support Areas for Participant Areas

5.1-2.8.1 General

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

See Section 2.1-2.8.1 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

5.1-2.8.2 Nursing Office

Adult day health care (ADHC) facilities shall have a nursing office.

5.1-2.8.2.1 Exam/treatment rooms provided for ADHC (including PACE) centers shall be permitted to serve as the nursing office. See Section 5.1-3.2 (Exam/Treatment Rooms) for information on ADHC treatment room requirements for PACE centers.

5.1-2.8.2.2 A work surface shall be provided in the nursing office.

5.1-2.8.3 – 5.1-2.8.7 Reserved

5.1-2.8.8 Medication Distribution and Storage Locations

See Section 2.1-2.8.8 (Medication Distribution and Storage Locations) for requirements.

5.1-2.8.9 Central Bathing Room

5.1-2.8.9.1 ~~Participants shall have access to at least~~ A minimum of one central bathing/personal care room sized to permit assisted bathing in a tub or shower shall be readily accessible to participants.

- (1) Where a bath or spa tub is provided in this room, it shall ~~be accessible to~~ comply with accessibility standards for participants in wheelchairs and other participant-operated mobility devices.
- (2) Where a participant shower is provided, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Barrier-free showers) for requirements.

5.1-2.8.9.2 Toilet facilities

- (1) See section 2.1-2.8.9.3 (Central Bathing Room—Toilet facilities) for requirements.
- (2) This toilet can be counted to comply with the requirement for one toilet to 10 participants served. See Section 5.1-2.3.8.2 (Support Areas for Dining, Recreation, and Activity Areas—Toilet rooms).

5.1-2.8.9.3 Grooming facilities

- (1) Access to a grooming location without reentry to the general corridor shall be provided.
- (2) See Section 2.1-2.8.9.4 (Central Bathing Room—Grooming facilities) for requirements.

5.1-2.8.9.4 Storage. Storage sized for a minimum of one change of clothing shall be provided for each participant in or adjacent to the central bathing room.

5.1-2.8.10 Personal Services (Hair Salon/Spa) Areas

5.1-2.8.10.1 Where hair salon services are offered, a styling bowl and station shall be provided.

5.1-2.8.10.2 These facilities shall be permitted to be located with the bathing facilities in Section 5.1-2.8.9 (Central Bathing Room).

5.1-2.8.11 Clean Workroom ~~or Clean Supply Room~~

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

A clean workroom ~~or clean supply room~~ that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room) shall be provided.

5.1-2.8.12 Soiled Holding Room ~~Workroom~~

A soiled holding room ~~workroom~~ that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12.2 (Soiled Workroom ~~and~~ ~~or~~ Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided.

5.1-2.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

The requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage) shall apply.

5.1-2.8.14 Reserved

5.1-2.8.15 Personal Laundry Facilities

5.1-2.8.15.1 Where personal laundry facilities are provided, the requirements Section 2.1-4.2.4 (Personal Laundry Facilities) shall apply.

5.1-2.8.15.2 Personal laundry facilities shall be permitted to be shared with the following:

- (1) Central bathing room. See Section 5.1-2.8.9 (Central Bathing Room).
- (2) Clean workroom. See Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room).
- (3) Soiled workroom. See Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom).

5.1-2.9 Support Areas for Staff

5.1-2.9.1 General

Support areas for staff shall be provided that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff) as amended in this section.

5.1-2.9.2 Staff Lounge Area

The staff lounge area shall be permitted to serve as the private conference area required in Section 5.1-6.3.1.2 (Conference or meeting room).

5.1-2.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors

5.1-2.10.1 – 5.1-2.10.2 Reserved

5.1-2.10.3 Pet Accommodations

Where pets will be permitted, see Section 2.1-2.10.3 (Pet Accommodations) for requirements.

5.1-2.10.4 Conference or Meeting Space

For shared private meeting areas, see Section 5.1-6.3.1.2 (Conference or meeting room) for requirements.

5.1-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

5.1-3.1 General

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

Where diagnostic and treatment areas are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas) as amended in this section.

5.1-3.2 Exam/Treatment Rooms

5.1-3.2.1 For an ADHC facility, a minimum of one exam/treatment room shall be provided.

5.1-3.2.2 For a PACE ADHC facility, see federal Programs of All-Inclusive Care for the Elderly (PACE) regulations for additional requirements.

5.1-4 Participant Support Facilities

5.1-4.1 Food Service Facilities

5.1-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the adult day care or ADHC facility shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

5.1-4.1.2 Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

5.1-4.1.2.1 Commercial kitchen

5.1-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

5.1-4.1.2.3 Household kitchen

5.1-4.1.2.4 Social activity kitchen

5.1-4.1.2.5 Outpatient therapy kitchen

5.1-4.1.2.6 Warming/serving kitchen

5.1-5 Building Support Facilities

See Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) for requirements.

5.1-6 Public and Administrative Areas

5.1-6.1 Reserved

5.1-6.2 Public Areas

5.1-6.2.1 Reserved

5.1-6.2.2 ~~Lobby~~ Entrance and Reception

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

~~Where a central lobby is provided as part of the day care center, see Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Lobby) for requirements.~~ An entrance and reception area shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Entrance and Reception).

5.1-6.3 Administrative Areas

5.1-6.3.1 Office and Conference Space

5.1-6.3.1.1 General. Offices or an open office area with private conference space shall be provided for business transactions and participant assessments and for the use of administrative and professional staff.

5.1-6.3.1.2 Conference or meeting room

- (1) A room sized to accommodate operational needs shall be provided for private meetings with a participant, staff, and family; caregiver assessments; and other activities that require privacy.
- (2) Sharing of this room by several services shall be permitted.

5.1-6.3.1.3 Office space

- (1) Staff office space and file storage shall be provided based on the staff required to operate the adult day care center and the services being provided.
- (2) For PACE ADHC facilities, medical professional offices shall be provided in accordance with federal Programs of All-Inclusive Care for the Elderly (PACE) regulations.

5.1-6.3.1.4 Office equipment and supply storage. Space for storage of office equipment and supplies shall be provided based on staff requirements and participant needs.

5.1-7 Design and Construction Requirements

5.1-7.1 Building Codes

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

5.1-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

5.1-7.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.1 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings—General) shall apply.

5.1-7.2.2 Architectural Details

Architectural details shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2 (Architectural Details) and the requirements in this section.

5.1-7.2.2.1 – 5.1-7.2.2.2 Reserved

5.1-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware

- (1) Doors to all rooms containing bathtubs, showers, and toilets for participant use shall be hinged, sliding, or folding.

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

- (2) Manual or automatic sliding doors shall be permitted where their use does not compromise fire and other emergency exiting requirements.

5.1-7.2.2.4 – 5.1-7.2.2.7 Reserved

5.1-7.2.2.8 Handwashing stations

- (1) The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall apply.
- (2) Omission of the mirror shall be permitted.

5.1-7.2.2.9 Reserved

5.1-7.2.2.10 Handrails and lean rails. Where handrails or lean rails are provided, the requirements Section 2.1-7.2.2.10 (Handrails and lean rails) shall apply.

5.1-7.2.2.11 – 5.1-7.2.2.12 Reserved

5.1-7.2.2.13 Protection from heated surfaces. Where cooking accommodations are provided for participants for activities for adult day care, emergency shutoffs shall be provided.

5.1-7.2.3 Surfaces

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) shall apply.

5.1-7.2.4 Furnishings

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.4 (Furnishings) shall apply.

5.1-8 Building Systems

5.1-8.1 General

See Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design).

5.1-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

5.1-8.2.1 General

5.1-8.2.1.1 Application. [HVAC systems that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided.](#) ~~For basic HVAC system requirements for adult day care and ADHC facilities, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.~~

5.1-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning. ~~See Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) for requirements.~~

[\(1\) The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 \(Ventilation and space conditioning\) shall apply in addition to those in this section.](#)

[\(2\) Ventilation and space conditioning systems shall meet requirements of a Level 2 ventilation and space conditioning systems as described in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2. \(3\) \(Ventilation and space conditioning levels\).](#)

5.1-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

5.1-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

~~5.1-8.2.3.1 Participant and related support areas. See ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality for basic HVAC system requirements.~~

5.1-8.2.3.1² Fuel-fired equipment rooms. Where rooms with fuel-fired equipment are provided, see Section 2.1-8.2.3.1 (Fuel-fired equipment rooms) for requirements.

5.1-8.2.3.2³ Areas of refuge. Where areas of refuge are provided, see Section 2.1-8.2.3.2 (Areas of refuge) for requirements.

5.1-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

5.1-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

5.1-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

~~See Section 4.1-8.2.6.1 (Assisted Living Settings—Filter efficiencies) for filter efficiency requirements.~~

5.1-8.2.6.1 Filter efficiencies

(1) For centralized recirculated systems, MERV 8 shall be the minimum filter efficiency for the first filter bank. There is no minimum filter efficiency requirement for the second filter bank.

(2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:

(a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.

(b) Serve only a single space.

(c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

5.1-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

(1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.

(2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

5.1-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

~~See Section 2.1-8.2.7 (Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) for requirements.~~

5.1-8.2.7.1 General. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.7 (Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

5.1-8.2.7.2 Heating systems. Adult day care and adult day health care (ADHC) facilities shall have a permanently installed heating system capable of maintaining an interior minimum temperature of 72°F (22°C) under heating design temperatures.

5.1-8.2.7.3 Cooling systems. Adult day care and ADHC facilities shall be configured and equipped with a cooling system capable of maintaining an interior maximum temperature of 75°F (24°C) under cooling design temperatures.

5.1-8.3 Electrical Systems

5.1-8.3.1 General

See Section 2.1-8.3.1 (Electrical Systems—General) for requirements.

5.1-8.3.2 Power-Generating and Storing Equipment

5.1-8.3.2.1 Essential electrical service

- (1) Adult day care and ADHC facilities that require essential electrical systems shall comply with the appropriate occupancy requirements of NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*.
- (2) As required by local codes and the care types, an essential electrical source shall provide emergency lighting and/or power during an interruption of the normal electrical supply.

5.1-8.3.2.2 Generators. Where generators are used in adult day care and ADHC facilities, exhaust systems (including locations, mufflers, and vibration isolators) for internal combustion engines shall be designed and installed to minimize noise.

5.1-8.3.3 Electrical Receptacles

Electrical receptacles shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.3.4 (Electrical Receptacles), except the requirements at Section 2.1-8.3.3.1 (2) (Receptacles in resident rooms and dwelling units).

5.1-8.3.4 Electrical Requirements for Areas Serving Ventilator-Dependent Participants

Where ventilators are used in an ADHC center, see Section 2.1-8.3.5 (Electrical Requirements for Ventilator-Dependent Resident Rooms and Areas) for requirements.

5.1-8.4 Plumbing Systems

5.1-8.4.1 General

5.1-8.4.1.1 Plumbing systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.1 (Plumbing Systems—General) as amended in this section.

5.1-8.4.1.2 Clinical sink. Where a clinical sink is provided in an adult day care or ADHC facility, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.5 (Clinical sinks) for requirements.

5.1-8.4.1.3 Portable hydrotherapy whirlpool. Where a portable hydrotherapy whirlpool is used in an adult day care or ADHC facility, see Section 2.1-8.4.3.6 (Portable hydrotherapy whirlpools) for requirements.

5.1-8.5 Communications Systems

5.1 Specific Requirements for Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care

~~Communication systems shall meet the requirements in Section 4.2-8.5 (Independent Living Settings—Communications Systems).~~

5.1-8.5.1 General ~~Communications Systems).~~

Communications systems shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.1 (Communications Systems) as amended in this section.

5.1-8.5.2 Call System

Where call systems are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.2 (Call System).

5.1-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

See Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) for requirements.

5.1-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

5.1-8.7.1 See Section 2.1-8.7.1 (Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems—General) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

5.1-8.7.2 Reserved

5.1-8.7.3 Artificial Lighting Systems

5.1-8.7.3.1 Participant toilet rooms shall have general lighting and task lighting.

5.1-8.7.3.2 Task light controls in the toilet room shall be readily accessible to participants.

5.1-8.8 Elevator Systems

5.1-8.8.1 General

Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems) in addition to the requirements in this section.

5.1-8.8.1.1 Application. Buildings having participant and/or staff use areas on more than one floor shall have electric or hydraulic elevator(s).

5.1-8.8.1.2 Number. ~~Engineered traffic studies are recommended, but in their absence the following guidelines for minimum number of elevators shall apply:~~

- (1) At least one elevator sized to accommodate participant-operated mobility device users shall be required where spaces used by participants are on any floor other than the main entrance floor.
- (2) Where adult day or ADHC facilities are part of a general hospital, the hospital's elevators shall be permitted to meet the requirement in Section 5.1-8.8.1.1 (Elevator Systems—Application).

~~5.1-8.8.2—5.1-8.8.4 Reserved~~

~~5.1-8.8.5 Handrails~~

~~Elevator cars shall have handrails on all sides without an entrance door. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.10 (Handrails and lean rails) for additional requirements.~~

5.2 Specific Requirements for Wellness Centers

5.2-1 General

5.2-1.1 Application

5.2-1.1.1 General

5.2-1.1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to facilities where wellness services are provided.

5.2-1.1.1.2 Wellness centers shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

5.2-1.1.1.3 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to wellness centers when cross-referenced in this chapter.

5.2-1.1.2 Design Criteria

5.2-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved Sustainable design. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.~~

5.2-1.1.2.2 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals of size. If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements of Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply except for the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4.2 (Resident room for individuals of size).

5.2-1.1.2.3 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, and cognitive and developmental disabilities. If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral or mental health issues~~, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

5.2-1.1.2.4 Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others. If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

5.2-1.2 Functional Program

5.2-1.2.1 A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

5.2-1.2.2 Shared Services

5.2-1.2.2.1 Where a wellness center is part of (or contractually linked with) another facility, sharing of services and space for home health, dietary, storage, pharmacy, linen, and other services shall be permitted insofar as practical.

5.2-1.2.2.2 Where a project calls for sharing or purchasing services from another entity, appropriate modifications in the requirements for space and parking shall be permitted.

5.2-1.2.2.3 A wellness center located in a facility housing other services shall have its own identifiable space.

5.2-1.3 Site

The requirements in Chapter 1.3 (Site) shall apply.

5.2-1.4 ~~Reserved~~ Safety Risk Assessment

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

5.2-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

See sections 1.2-1.3 (Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) for requirements.

5.2-2 Participant Areas

5.2-2.1 – 5.2-2.2 Reserved

5.2-2.3 Participant Health and Wellness Areas

5.2-2.3.1 Recreation, Exercise, and Fitness Training Spaces

Spaces shall be provided to accommodate the recreational activities, exercise classes, and fitness training programs offered to participants in the wellness center.

5.2-2.3.2 – 5.2-2.3.3 Reserved

5.2-2.3.4 Outdoor Activity Areas

Where an outdoor activity area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas).

5.2-2.3.5 – 5.2-2.3.7 Reserved

5.2-2.3.8 Support Areas for Participant Health and Wellness Areas

5.2-2.3.8.1 General. See Section 2.1-2.8.1 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient and Participant Areas—Application) for requirements.

5.2-2.3.8.2 Staff work area

- (1) Staff work areas shall be provided to support the services provided in the wellness center.
- (2) Evaluation of staffing space needs shall be completed as part of the functional programming process.

5.2-2.3.8.3 – 5.2-2.3.8.5 Reserved

5.2-2.3.8.6 Public toilet rooms. Public toilet rooms shall be provided adjacent to or directly accessible from exercise and fitness training spaces.

- (1) Toilets for the recreation, exercise, and fitness training space shall be permitted to be shared with other activities.

(2) Location of toilets in a locker room shall be permitted.

5.2-2.3.8.7 Locker rooms. Changing areas and storage lockers shall be provided where required to support the services provided.

(1) Toilet rooms. See Section 5.2-2.3.8.6 (Public toilet rooms) for requirements.

(2) Showers shall be provided as required for the wellness/fitness program offered in the wellness center.

(a) See Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (2) (Showers and tubs—Accessible showers) for requirements.

(b) Location of the showers in a locker room shall be permitted.

5.2-2.3.8.8 – 5.2-2.3.8.12 Reserved

5.2-2.3.8.13 Equipment and supply storage. The requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.13.2 (Equipment and supply storage) shall apply.

5.2-2.3.9 Support Areas for Staff

Where a staff lounge area will be provided, the requirements in Section 5.1-2.9.2 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities: Support Areas for Staff—Staff Lounge Area) shall apply.

5.2-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

5.2-3.1 General

5.2-3.1.1 Application

Where diagnostic and treatment areas are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas) as amended in this section.

5.2-3.1.2 Waiting Areas

Waiting areas shall be provided based on the services being delivered and participant waiting times required for specific services or treatments.

5.2-4 Participant Support Facilities

5.2-4.1 Food Service Facilities

5.2-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the adult day care or adult day health care facility shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

5.2-4.1.2 Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

5.2-4.1.2.1 Commercial kitchen

5.2-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

5.2-4.1.2.3 Household kitchen

5.2-4.1.2.4 Social activity kitchen

5.2-4.1.2.5 Outpatient therapy kitchen

5.2-4.1.2.6 Warming/serving kitchen

5.2-5 Building Support Facilities

See Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) for requirements.

5.2-6 Public and Administrative Areas

5.2-6.1 Reserved

5.2-6.2 Public Areas

5.2-6.2.1 Reserved

5.2-6.2.2 ~~Lobby~~ Entrance and Reception

~~Where a central lobby is provided as part of the day care center, see Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Lobby) for requirements. An entrance and reception area shall be provided meeting the requirements of Section 2.1-6.2.2 (Entrance and Reception).~~

5.2-6.2.3 Retail Space

5.2-6.2.3.1 Where retail space is provided, layout shall allow for circulation of participants using participant-operated mobility devices.

5.2-6.2.3.2 Where food service is provided, see Section 2.1-4.1.3 (Retail Kitchen) for food service facility requirements.

5.2-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall be provided to support the administrative services performed in the wellness center as indicated by an evaluation of staffing needs.

5.2-7 Design and Construction Requirements

For design and construction requirements for the wellness center, the requirements in Section 5.1-7 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Design and Construction Requirements) shall apply.

5.2-8 Building Systems

5.2-8.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) shall apply as amended in this section.

5.2-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

5.2-8.2.1 General

5.2-8.2.1.1 Application. HVAC systems that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided. ~~For basic HVAC system requirements for wellness centers, see ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.~~

5.2-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning. ~~See~~

(1) The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) shall apply in addition to those in this section. ~~for requirements.~~

(2) Ventilation and space conditioning systems shall meet the requirements of a Level 2 ventilation and space conditioning system as defined in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (3) (Ventilation and space conditioning levels).

5.2-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

5.2-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

~~See Section 5.1-8.2.3 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations) for requirements.~~

5.2-8.2.3.1 Fuel-fired equipment rooms. Where rooms with fuel-fired equipment are provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.1 (Fuel-fired equipment rooms) shall apply.

5.2-8.2.3.1 Areas of refuge. Where areas of refuge are provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.2 (Areas of refuge) shall apply.

5.2-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

5.2-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

5.2-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

~~See Section 4.1-8.2.6.1 (Assisted Living Settings—Filter efficiencies) for filter efficiency requirements.~~

5.2-8.2.6.1 Filter efficiencies

(1) For centralized recirculated systems, MERV 8 shall be the minimum filter efficiency for the first filter bank. There is no minimum filter efficiency requirement for the second filter bank.

(2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:

(a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.

(b) Serve only a single space.

(c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

5.2-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

(1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.

(2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

5.2-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

~~See Section 4.1-8.2.7 (Assisted Living Settings—Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) for requirements.~~

5.2-8.2.7.1 General. The requirements in Section ~~4.1~~ 2.1-8.2.7 (Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

5.2-8.2.7.2 Heating systems. Wellness centers shall have a permanently installed heating system capable of maintaining an interior minimum temperature of 72°F (22°C) under heating design temperatures.

5.2-8.2.7.3 Cooling systems. Wellness centers shall be configured and equipped with a cooling system capable of maintaining an interior maximum temperature of 75°F (24°C) under cooling design temperatures.

5.2-8.3 Electrical Systems

Electrical systems for the wellness center shall meet the requirements of Section 5.1-8.3 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Electrical Systems).

5.2-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems for the wellness center shall meet the requirements of Section 5.1-8.4 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Plumbing Systems).

5.2-8.5 Communications Systems

5.2-8.5.1 General

Communications systems shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.1 (Communications Systems) as amended in this section.

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.1 (Communications Systems—General) for requirements.~~

5.2-8.5.2 Call Systems

Where call systems are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.2 (Call System).

~~Where call systems are provided, the following requirements shall be met:~~

~~5.2-8.5.2.1 Where wireless systems are used, consideration shall be given to electromagnetic compatibility between internal and external sources.~~

~~5.2-8.5.2.2 Call systems shall comply with UL Standard 2560: *Emergency Call Systems for Assisted Living and Independent Living Facilities*.~~

~~5.2-8.5.3 Telecommunications Systems~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5.3 (Telecommunications Systems) for requirements.~~

5.2-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

5.2-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.7.1 (Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems—General) shall apply.

5.2-8.7.2 Reserved

5.2-8.7.3 Artificial Lighting Systems

5.2-8.7.3.1 Participant toilet rooms shall have general lighting and task lighting.

5.2-8.7.3.2 Task light controls in the toilet room shall be readily accessible to participants.

5.2-8.8 Elevator Systems

~~See Section 5.1-8.8 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Elevator Systems) for requirements.~~ Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems).

5.3 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

5.3-1 General

5.3-1.1 Application

5.3-1.1.1 General

5.3-1.1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to the following:

- (1) Facilities where outpatient rehabilitation services and therapies are provided
- (2) Locations where rehabilitation services and therapies are provided when cross-referenced from other chapters in the *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*

5.3-1.1.1.2 Outpatient rehabilitation facilities shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Residential Care and Support Settings*.

5.3-1.1.1.3 The requirements in Chapter 2.1 (Common Elements for Residential Care and Support Settings) shall apply to outpatient rehabilitation therapy facilities when cross-referenced in this chapter.

5.3-1.1.2 Design Criteria

5.3-1.1.2.1 ~~Reserved Sustainable design. See Section 1.2-6.3 (Sustainable Design) for requirements.~~

5.3-1.1.2.2 **Accommodations for care of individuals of size.** If the care population will include individuals of size, the requirements of Section 2.1-2.2.4 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) shall apply except for the requirements in Section 2.1-2.2.4.2 (Resident room for individuals of size).

5.3-1.1.2.3 **Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, and cognitive and developmental disabilities.** If the care population will include residents with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral or mental health issues~~, or cognitive or developmental disabilities, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.2 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with neurodiverse and diverse neurocognitive conditions including dementia, ~~behavioral and mental health issues~~, or cognitive and development disabilities) shall apply.

5.3-1.1.2.4 **Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others.** If the care population will include residents with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others, the requirements in Section 2.1-2.1.2.3 (Design criteria for accommodations for care of individuals with behaviors that pose a risk of harm to self or others) shall apply.

5.3-1.2 Functional Program

5.3-1.2.1 A functional program shall be developed in accordance with Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

5.3-1.2.2 Shared Services

5.3 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

5.3-1.2.2.1 Where an outpatient rehabilitation therapy facility is part of (or contractually linked with) another facility, sharing of services and space for home health, dietary, storage, pharmacy, linen, and other services shall be permitted insofar as practical.

5.3-1.2.2.2 Where a project calls for sharing or purchasing services from another entity, appropriate modifications in the requirements for space and parking shall be permitted.

5.3-1.2.2.3 Location of an outpatient rehabilitation facility in a facility housing other clinical services shall be permitted.

5.3-1.2.2.4 All support spaces shall be permitted to be shared.

5.3-1.3 – 5.4-1.4 Reserved Site

~~See Chapter 1.3 (Site) for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

~~**Safety Risk Assessment**~~

~~See Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment) for requirements.~~

5.3-1.5 Environment of Care Requirements

See sections 1.2-1.3 (Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations) and 1.2-5 (Environment of Care Requirements) for requirements.

5.3-2 Reserved

5.3-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

5.3-3.1 General

5.3-3.1.1 Where diagnostic and treatment areas are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3 (Diagnostic and Treatment Areas) as amended in this section.

5.3-3.1.2 Where two or more rehabilitation therapies and services are provided, sharing of facilities and equipment between the therapies and services shall be permitted.

5.3-3.1.3 Privacy for Individuals Receiving Rehabilitation Therapy

5.3-3.1.3.1 See Section 2.1-3.2.4 (Resident, Participant, and Patient Privacy) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

5.3-3.1.3.2 Windows in therapy rooms or areas shall have window treatments to provide patient privacy.

5.3-3.1.3.3 Where multiple therapies occur in an exercise or therapy area, individual therapy spaces shall have provisions for privacy.

5.3-3.1.4 Outpatient Waiting Areas

5.3-3.1.4.1 Size. The waiting room capacity needed for each therapy provided shall be based on the care population being served.

5.3-3.1.4.2 Location. Outpatient waiting areas shall be located out of traffic with provisions for wheelchairs and other outpatient-operated mobility devices.

5.3-3.1.4.3 Access to drinking water. A drinking water source shall be provided for outpatient use.

5.3-3.2 Physical and/or Occupational Therapy Rooms and Areas

5.3-3.2.1 General

5.3-3.2.1.1 Where physical and/or occupational therapy is offered, the therapy rooms and/or areas shall meet the requirements in this section.

5.3-3.2.1.2 Space shall be provided for carrying out each type of therapy and service identified during the planning phase.

5.3-3.2.1.3 Space shall be permitted to be shared with another function.

5.3-3.2.2 Therapy Areas

5.3-3.2.2.1 Individual therapy room. Where an individual therapy room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) Space requirements shall be based on the equipment used for therapy.

(2) Space provided shall allow access to the equipment when in use by the patient and the therapist.

(a) Area

(i) An individual therapy room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

(ii) For design criteria for accommodation of individuals of size, see Section 2.1-3.2.2.1 (2) (Exam/Treatment Room: Space Requirements—Area) for requirements.

(b) Clearances. Room arrangement shall permit a minimum clearance of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) on at least three sides of the therapy furniture and equipment.

5.3-3.2.2.2 Individual therapy area. Where individual therapy areas are provided in a larger therapy or exercise area, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) Each therapy space shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

(2) A minimum of one handwashing station shall be provided in the therapy or exercise area. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.

5.3-3.2.3 Physical Therapy Exercise [and Evaluation](#) Area

5.3-3.2.3.1 General. A physical therapy exercise [and evaluation](#) area shall be permitted to be shared with other fitness training spaces, based on the services being provided and the setting (e.g., a stand-alone facility versus one that is part of a continuing care retirement community).

5.3-3.2.3.2 Space requirements

(1) The layout of the exercise area shall include a staff work area arranged so that staff can view activities taking place in the exercise area.

5.3 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

(2) ~~An open, barrier-free~~ Space for rehab therapy shall be provided based on the following:

- (a) Number of patients treated at the same time
- (b) Number of staff members present at the same time
- (c) Clearance requirements for equipment used

5.3-3.2.3.3 Handwashing station. At least one handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be provided in the physical therapy exercise area.

5.3-3.2.4 Therapeutic Pool

5.3-3.2.4.1 Space requirements. Where therapy services include use of a pool, the pool shall be large enough to accommodate the number of patients to be served at one time.

5.3-3.2.4.2 Outpatient changing area. An outpatient changing area shall be provided where therapy services include use of a pool.

- (1) The outpatient changing area shall consist of single gender-inclusive rooms or a locker room to service multiple people of the same sex.
- (2) The outpatient changing area shall be directly accessible to the pool without entering public or exercise areas.
- (3) A toilet room shall be provided that is directly accessible to the changing area.
- (4) At least one shower shall be provided separate from the toilet room.
- (5) Securable lockers shall be provided.

5.3-3.2.4.3 Pool storage

- (1) Separate storage for pool chemicals and testing equipment shall be provided.
- (2) Pool chemicals and supplies shall not be permitted to be stored in an environmental services room.

5.3-3.3 Other Outpatient Care Areas

5.3-3.3.1 Prosthetics and Orthotics Area

Where space for evaluation and fitting of prosthetics and orthotics is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

5.3-3.3.1.1 Privacy. Space for evaluation and fitting of prosthetics and orthotics shall have provision for privacy.

5.3-3.3.1.2 Handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser

- (1) If staff is required to work with or mix wet material or handle material or chemicals that are caustic to the skin, a handwashing station and an eyewash station shall be provided.
- (2) If staff is not required to work with or mix wet material or handle material or chemicals that are caustic to the skin, provision of a hand sanitation dispenser shall be permitted.

5.3 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

5.3-3.3.1.3 Clinical sink. Where running water is needed for materials preparation in the prosthetic and orthotic areas, a clinical sink(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-8.4.3.5 (Clinical sinks).

5.3-3.3.2 Speech and Hearing Area

5.3-3.3.2.1 Application. Where speech and hearing therapies are offered, a room that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided.

5.3-3.3.2.2 Speech privacy

- (1) A gasketed door with a sweep shall be provided in the speech and hearing room.
- (2) The room design shall minimize external sound from high-traffic, public, and similarly noisy areas.

5.3-3.3.2.3 Space requirements. Speech and hearing therapy rooms shall have a clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

5.3-3.3.2.4 Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in the speech and hearing therapy room.

5.3-3.3.3 Education and Vocational Therapy Classroom

5.3-3.3.3.1 Where retraining, educational, or small group therapies are provided for outpatients, at least one classroom shall be provided.

5.3-3.3.3.2 Space requirements

- (1) Each classroom shall provide 30 square feet (2.79 square meters) per outpatient in addition to space for the instructor and instructional resources.
- (2) At minimum, each classroom shall have an area of 150 square feet (13.94 square meters).

5.3-3.3.4 Facilities for Other Therapy Services

5.3-3.3.4.1 Where other services are provided, dedicated diagnostic and treatment area(s) to accommodate those services shall be provided, including workspace for therapists.

5.3-3.3.4.2 Handwashing station

- (1) A handwashing station shall be provided for any additional therapy rooms provided.
- (2) Where other therapy service areas are shared, a handwashing station shall also be permitted to be shared with those areas.

5.3-3.3.5 Outdoor Activity Areas

Where an outdoor activity area is provided, see Section 2.1-2.3.4 (Outdoor Activity Areas) for requirements.

5.3-3.4 – 5.3-3.7 Reserved

5.3-3.8 Support Areas for Diagnostic and Treatment Areas

5.3-3.8.1 General

See Section 2.1-2.8.1 (Support Areas for Resident, Patient, and Participant Areas—Application) for

requirements.

5.3-3.8.2 Staff Work Area

See Section 2.1-2.8.2 (Staff Work Area) for requirements in addition to those in this section.

5.3-3.8.3 Documentation Area

Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in all therapy service areas.

5.3-3.8.4 – 5.3-3.8.8 Reserved

5.3-3.8.9 Central Bathing Room

5.3-3.8.9.1 General. Where therapy services provided include a focus on residential activities of daily living, including bathing, a mock-up or real residential-style bathroom shall be provided for therapy activities.

5.3-3.8.9.2 Outpatient changing areas. Where required by the therapy program, the following shall be provided:

- (1) Changing areas
- (2) Toilets
- (3) Showers
- (4) Securable lockers

5.3-3.8.9.3 Toilet room. A toilet room with space for toilet training for outpatients shall be provided.

5.3-3.8.10 Reserved

5.3-3.8.11 Therapeutic ~~Personal~~ Laundry Facilities

Where the therapy services provided include washing laundry, folding clothing, and other laundry-related activities of daily living, the outpatient setting shall include a functional or non-functional washer and a dryer.

5.3-3.8.12 Soiled Holding Room

A soiled holding room meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom and Soiled Holding Room) ~~Separate storage for soiled linen, towels, and supplies~~ shall be provided.

5.3-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

5.3-3.8.13.1 Clean linen storage. Storage for clean linen and towels shall be provided in cabinets, closets, or separate storerooms.

5.3-3.8.13.2 Storage for therapeutic equipment and safety devices. Designated storage for therapeutic equipment, safety devices, and other clinical supplies used for the clinical services offered by the facility shall be provided for the following areas:

- (1) Exercise area

5.3 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

- (2) Therapy room and/or therapy area
- (3) Pool area
- (4) Prosthetic, orthotic, speech, hearing, or other clinical services

5.3-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

See Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff) for requirements.

5.3-3.10 Support Areas for Family and Visitors

Where pet therapy will be provided in the outpatient rehabilitation facility, see Section 2.1-2.10.3 (Pet Accommodations) for requirements.

5.3-4 Participant Support Facilities

5.3-4.1 Food Service Facilities

5.3-4.1.1 General

The type and size of the outpatient rehabilitation facility shall determine the dietary environment and the food service facilities provided.

5.3-4.1.2 Where the following food service facility types are provided, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Food Service Facilities):

5.3-4.1.2.1 Reserved

5.3-4.1.2.2 Retail kitchen

5.3-4.1.2.3 – 5.3-4.1.2.4 Reserved

5.3-4.1.2.5 Outpatient therapy kitchen

5.3-4.2 Linen and Laundry Service Facilities

Where a contract service is used in lieu of the facilities in Section 5.3-3.8.11 (Personal Laundry Facilities) and linen is processed off-site, the following shall be provided:

5.3-4.2.1 Service Entrance

A service entrance, protected from inclement weather, shall be provided for loading and unloading of linen. This can be shared with other services and serve as the loading dock for the facility.

5.3-4.2.2 Control Station

A control station for pickup and receiving shall be provided. This can be shared with other services and serve as the service receiving and pickup point for the facility.

5.3-5 Building Support Facilities

5.3 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

The requirements in Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities) shall apply.

5.3-6 Public and Administrative Areas

5.3-6.1 Reserved

5.3-6.2 Public Areas

5.3-6.2.1 Reserved

5.3-6.2.2 Lobby

5.3-6.2.2.1 Where an outpatient rehabilitation facility has a separate entrance and [reception area lobby](#), it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2.2 ([Lobby Entrance and Reception](#)).

5.3-6.2.2.2 Access to drinking water. A drinking water source shall be provided for patient use.

5.3-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall be provided to support the administrative services performed in the outpatient rehabilitation center as indicated by an evaluation of staffing needs.

5.3-6.3.1 Office Space

5.3-6.3.1.1 Staff office space and file storage shall be provided based on the staff required to operate and provide therapy services.

5.3-6.3.1.2 Reception shall be permitted to be combined with office and clerical space.

5.3-6.3.1.3 Reserved

5.3-6.3.1.4 Office equipment and supply storage. Space for storage of office equipment and supplies shall be provided based on staff requirements and outpatient needs.

5.3-7 Design and Construction Requirements

5.3-7.1 Building Codes

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.1 (Building Codes and Standards) shall apply.

5.3-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

5.3-7.2.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.1 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings—General) shall apply.

5.3-7.2.2 Architectural Details

Architectural details shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2 (Architectural Details) and the requirements in this section.

5.3 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

5.3-7.2.2.1 – 5.3-7.2.2.2 Reserved

5.3-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware. Doors and door hardware shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-7.2.2.3 (Doors and door hardware) and 5.1-7.2.2.3 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Doors and door hardware).

5.3-7.2.2.4 – 5.3-7.2.2.7 Reserved

5.3-7.2.2.8 Handwashing station. Omission of the mirror required in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be permitted.

5.3-7.2.2.9 Grab bars. Grab bars shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.9 (Grab bars).

5.3-7.2.2.10 Handrails and lean rails. Where handrails or lean rails are provided, see Section 2.1-7.2.2.10 (Handrails and lean rails) for requirements.

5.3-7.2.3 Surfaces

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) shall apply.

5.3-7.2.4 Furnishings

The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.4 (Furnishings) shall apply.

5.3-8 Building Systems

5.3-8.1 General

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.1 (Building System Design) shall apply.

5.3-8.2 Heating, Ventilation and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

~~HVAC systems shall meet the requirements in Section 5.1-8.2 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning).~~

5.3-8.2.1 General

5.3-8.2.1.1 Application. HVAC systems that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided for outpatient rehabilitation therapy facilities.

5.3-8.2.1.2 Ventilation and space conditioning

(1) The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (Ventilation and space conditioning) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

(2) Ventilation and space conditioning systems shall meet the requirements of a Level 2 ventilation and space conditioning system as defined in Section 2.1-8.2.1.2 (b) (Level 2 ventilation and space conditioning).

5.3-8.2.2 Mechanical System Design

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.2 (Mechanical System Design) shall apply.

5.3-8.2.3 HVAC Requirements for Specific Locations

5.3-8.2.3.1 Fuel-fired equipment rooms. Where rooms with fuel-fired equipment are provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.1 (Fuel-fired equipment rooms) shall apply.

5.3-8.2.3.3 Areas of refuge. Where areas of refuge are provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.3.2 (Areas of refuge) shall apply.

5.3-8.2.4 Thermal and Acoustic Insulation

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.4 (Thermal and Acoustic Insulation) shall apply.

5.3-8.2.5 HVAC Air Distribution

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.5 (HVAC Air Distribution) shall apply.

5.3-8.2.6 HVAC Filters

5.3-8.2.6.1 Filter efficiencies

- (1) For centralized recirculated systems, MERV 8 shall be the minimum filter efficiency for the first filter bank. There is no minimum filter efficiency requirement for the second filter bank.
- (2) For noncentral recirculating room systems, HVAC units shall:
 - (a) Not receive nonfiltered, nonconditioned outdoor air.
 - (b) Serve only a single space.
 - (c) Include the manufacturer's recommended filter for airflow passing over any surface that is designed to condense water. This filter shall be located upstream of any such cold surface so that all of the air passing over the cold surface is filtered.

5.3-8.2.6.2 Filter frames for centralized systems

- (1) Filter frames shall be durable and proportioned to provide an airtight fit with the enclosing ductwork.
- (2) All joints between filter segments and the enclosing ductwork shall have gaskets or seals to provide a positive seal against air leakage.

5.3-8.2.7 Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment

5.3-8.2.7.1 General. The requirements in Section 2.1-8.2.7 (Heating Systems, Cooling Systems, and Equipment) shall apply in addition to those in this section.

5.3-8.2.7.2 Heating systems. Outpatient rehabilitation therapy facilities shall have a permanently installed heating system capable of maintaining an interior minimum temperature of 72°F (22°C) under heating design temperatures.

5.3-8.2.7.3 Cooling systems. Outpatient rehabilitation therapy facilities shall be configured and equipped with a cooling system capable of maintaining an interior maximum temperature of 75°F (24°C) under cooling design temperatures.

5.3-8.3 Electrical Systems

Electrical systems shall meet the requirements in Section 5.1-8.3 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Electrical Systems).

5.3-8.4 Plumbing Systems

Plumbing systems shall meet the requirements in Section 5.1-8.4 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Plumbing Systems).

5.3-8.5 Communications Systems

~~Communications systems shall meet the requirements in Section 4.2-8.5 (Independent Living Settings—Communications Systems).~~

5.3-8.5.1 General

Communications systems shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-8.5.1 (Communications Systems) as amended in this section.

5.3-8.5.2 Call System

Where a call system is provided, it shall meet the requirements of Section 2.1-8.5.2 (Call system).

5.3-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

The requirements in Section 2.1-8.6 (Electronic Safety and Security Systems) shall apply.

5.3-8.7 Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems

The requirements in Section 5.1-8.7 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Daylighting and Artificial Lighting Systems) shall apply.

5.3-8.8 Elevator Systems

~~See Section 5.1-8.8 (Adult Day Care and Adult Day Health Care Facilities—Elevator Systems) for requirements.~~

Elevator systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.8 (Elevator Systems).